

THE MANIPULATION OF TREES  
AND LINEAR GRAPHS WITHIN A COMPUTER  
AND SOME APPLICATIONS

ALEX KAREL OBRUČA

Thesis submitted for the degree  
of Doctor of Philosophy at the  
University of Newcastle-upon-Tyne  
on June 1966

P R E F A C E .

The ideas for this thesis developed during and shortly after my work for the Master of Science degree. A few concepts and definitions of this thesis were introduced in the dissertation but are re-introduced for completeness . Most of the thesis is original and where it is not, the parts are indicated as such. The last part of the matrix bandwidth minimisation is the result of a suggestion from and collaboration with Dr. H.I.Scoins. One of my main problems has been terminology. Every one who has published seems to make it a point of principle to use different names for the same concepts. I am not blameless, however, I try to use a combination of Berge's and Harary's definitions and terminology as a basis, with a few additions of my own.

The thesis is divided into two parts : Chapters and Appendices. Chapters 1 to 6 set out to define the terms used and the theory behind the applications. The Appendices contain the relevant programs and other practical work.

I would like to take this opportunity of thanking the Science Research Council ( or the then Department of Scientific and Industrial Research) for their finan-

cial help without which this thesis would not have been possible. I would like to also thank the members of the Computing laboratory for their patience and especially Dr. H.I.Scoins for his helpful supervision.

Last but not least, I would like to record my appreciation to my wife who has put up with a lot of bad temperedness on my part as a result of this thesis and without whose help this thesis would not have appeared at all.

A. Obruča

A B S T R A C T .

-----

A digraph of  $z$  points and  $br$  arcs can be represented by its adjacency matrix. Within a computer this means a storage of  $z^2$  elements. By suppressing obvious information, a reduction can be made in the storage required. The branches list representation stores the non-zero elements of the adjacency matrix and requires only  $(br + z)$  elements.

Any trees required for computer manipulation are rooted and ordered. They can be represented in the two arrays  $below[j]$  and  $posnbr[j]$ , where  $below[j]$  stores the below of a point  $j$  and  $posnbr[j]$  its positive neighbour. However, this representation is very inconvenient for 'going up' the tree. Thus another representation called the  $rd, lu$  representation is defined such that it is nearly as easy to go up the tree as to go down it. A few procedures were written which enabled an ordered-rooted tree to be divided into two parts and rejoined together at different points. This technique forms a basis for *Toptree* and *Transportree*. A successful investigation was also carried out to find a relationship between labelled ordered-rooted trees and labelled binary pendant trees.

Toptree is a heuristic method of obtaining a good solution in a relatively short time to the Traveling Salesman Problem . It is based on the observation that the majority of lines of a minimal solution (to the problem) appear in the minimal spanning tree (for that same graph). The technique is to reduce multi-membered stars of the minimal spanning tree so as to have all points incident to at most two lines. This seems to give very good results on both random data and published examples.

The problem of minimising the bandwidth of a matrix was also examined . The problem was re-stated as that of having to label the points of a large graph so that the maximum difference between the labels of adjacent points is a minimum. The problem of doing this quickly was not solved but here again , techniques based on the spanning tree for that graph were evolved which reduced the initial bandwidth considerably . An algorithm was written which did find the minimum bandwidth labelling by going through the permutation list. But due to the size of the list this was slow and impractical for graphs with  $n$  greater than 20.

The nature of this work was such that it was suitable to tackle the Shortest Paths ( through a digraph ) Problem. The tree spanning technique was developed so that for large, highly sparse digraphs ( or networks ) , it was found to be more efficient than the Cascade method, one of the better matrix type methods.

Finally H.I.Scoins method of solving the Transportation Problem was refined ( and called Transpor-tree ) so that the tree was not kept in the below array (i.e. as a rooted tree) but in the rd, lu representation. This results in the time spent list processing in order to go up the tree being drastically reduced . This last section was merely an exercise in showing how ordered-rooted trees and their manipulation are of use in a wide array of problems.

I N D E X .



I	P R E F A C E .	i
II	A B S T R A C T .	iii
III	I N D E X .	vi
IV	C H A P T E R S .	1
1	INTRODUCTION.	1
1.1	<u>General Introduction.</u>	1
1.2	<u>Definitions.</u>	3
1.21	Digraphs.	3
1.22	Graphs.	6
1.23	Trees.	9
1.23.1	Some Properties of Trees and Graphs.	12
1.23.2	Functions on Trees.	14
1.3	A Short Note.	18
2	REPRESENTATION AND MANIPULATION.	22
2.1	<u>Representation.</u>	22
2.11	Theoretic Representation.	23
2.11.1	Graphs and Digraphs.	23
2.11.2	Unlabelled Trees.	28

2.11.3	$\rho$ -Trees.	32
2.12	Computer Representation.	33
2.12.1	Digraphs and Graphs.	34
2.12.2	$\rho$ -Trees.	35
2.2	<u>Manipulation.</u>	36
2.21	Graphs.	36
2.22	Trees.	39
3	TOPTREE.	40
3.1	<u>Introduction.</u>	40
3.2	<u>The Minimal Spanning Tree ( Mintree ).</u>	43
3.21	Description of Mintree.	44
3.3	<u>Theoretical Description of Toptree.</u>	47
3.31	The ordering of the Stars.	51
3.31.1	Adjacent Multi-membered Stars.	53
3.4	<u>Practical Description of Toptree.</u>	55
3.5	<u>The Number of Tours in a Subset <math>S_m</math>.</u>	61
3.6	<u>Obtaining the Minimal Solution.</u>	64
3.7	<u>Data Preparation and a Short Note.</u>	66
3.8	<u>Analysis of Results.</u>	68
3.9	<u>Conclusion.</u>	74

4	THE MINIMISATION OF THE BANDWIDTH OF A MATRIX	75
4.1	<u>General Discussion.</u>	75
4.2	<u>Relationship between Matrices and Graphs.</u>	78
4.3	<u>Tree-like Matrices.</u>	80
4.4	<u>Stage 1.</u>	83
4.41	Mushrooming r-trees with Maximum Height.	86
4.42	Evaluation of $E(G)$ .	88
4.43	Finding the Important Partial Graph.	89
4.44	Analysis of Stage 1 .	93
4.5	<u>Stage 2.</u>	94
4.51	Graphical Model.	95
4.51.1	Manipulation of the Graph.	99
4.51.2	Labelling of the Graph.	105
4.52	Analysis of Stage 2 .	107
4.6	<u>Stage 3.</u>	108
4.61	Introduction.	108
4.62	Generating the $K[i]$ ( or Rules of Choice ).	111
4.63	Tests for Rejection.	115
4.64	Summary of Rules and Tests.	119
4.65	The Algorithm.	120
4.66	Analysis of Stage 3.	122
4.7	<u>Conclusion.</u>	124

5	SHORTEST DISTANCES ON A DIGRAPH .	130
5.1	<u>General Discussion.</u>	130
5.2	<u>The Matrix Methods.</u>	133
5.21	The Cascade Algorithm.	135
5.3	<u>The Tree Methods.</u>	137
5.31	Shortest Routes 1 .	140
5.32	Shortest Route 2 .	142
5.4	<u>Conclusion.</u>	146
6	THE TRANSPORTATION PROBLEM .	148
6.1	<u>General Discussion.</u>	148
6.2	<u>Obtaining the Initial Tree.</u>	150
6.3	<u>Obtaining the Final Solution.</u>	151
6.4	<u>Conclusion.</u>	154
V	R E F E R E N C E S .	155
VI	A P P E N D I C E S .	1
1	GENERAL PROCEDURES.	1
1.1	Trees.	1

2	TOPTREE.	14
2.1	Top tree Program.	14
2.2	Data for Input.	23
2.3	Random Data Preparation and Mintree.	24
2.4	Dynamic Programming Program.	28
2.5	Specimen Output.	34
3	BANDWIDTH MINIMISATION.	36
3.1	Segment 1.	45
3.2	Segment 2.	66
3.3	Segment 3.	83
3.4	Data Preparation.	95
3.5	Specimen Output.	97
4	SHORTEST PATHS.	102
4.1	Cascade.	102
4.2	Shortest Route 1.	105
4.3	Shortest Route 2.	108
4.4	Specimen Input and Output.	111
5	TRANSPORTREE.	115
5.1	Specimen Input and Output.	126

## I INTRODUCTION.

-----

### 1.1 General Discussion.

The underlying theme behind this work, as the title may suggest, has been the study of trees and how they may be of use in the solution of some types of problems. A little time is spent describing graphs but merely for completeness sake.

A lot of work has been done in graph theory many theorems have been proved or disproved, but unfortunately little of it has been applied . Concepts like Grundy functions , chromatic or ordinal numbering of a graph or various operations such as conjunctive products of and compositions on two graphs, seem to be merely the toys of pure mathematicians. The thesis goes only a little way in using some of these ideas. The main building block behind the applications in Chapters 3 to 6 has been the spanning tree. In Chapter 3, the minimal cost spanning tree for a given graph is used to find a good solution to the Travelling Salesman Problem . In Chapter 4, the spanning tree is used to find a good permutation matrix which yields a reduction in the bandwidth of a symmetric matrix . In Chapter 5, we use the spanning tree technique to obtain the shortest distance between pairs of points in a digraph . In Chapter 6,

we could have used the minimal cost spanning tree to obtain an initial solution to the Transportation Problem. However as the basic solution is a spanning tree , we use the manipulation of Chapter 3 to rearrange the configuration of the tree into one which has optimal solution.

Working knowledge of Algol is assumed when discussing the programming. However, slight traces of Algol terminology do appear in places throughout the thesis. The definitions that follow will be primarily concerned with the terms used in the following chapters . Further definitions and reading can be found in [ 1, 2, 5, 7, 45 ].

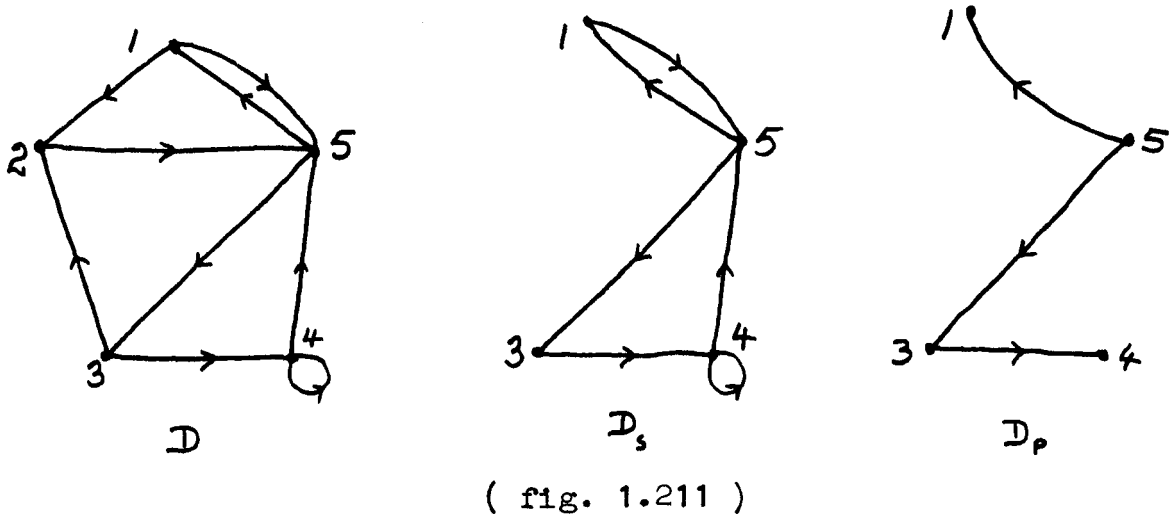
## 1.2 Definitions.

### 1.21 Digraphs.

We define a set as a collection of objects (which themselves will be referred to as elements). A set will be represented by capital letters and its elements by small ones, e.g.  $V = \{a, b, \dots, v, w\}$ . Let  $\mathcal{L}$  be a one-to-many function mapping a set  $V$  into itself. Then we define a digraph ( directed graph ) to be the pair  $(V, \mathcal{L})$  for some  $V$  and some function  $\mathcal{L}$ . A pictorial representation can be obtained if the set  $V$  is represented by points in a space and if  $y \in \mathcal{L}(x)$ , where  $x, y \in V$ , then in the space there will be a continuous line joining  $x$  to  $y$ . To distinguish between a line joining  $y$  to  $x$  and one joining  $x$  to  $y$  (i.e.  $x \in \mathcal{L}(y)$  and  $y \in \mathcal{L}(x)$ ), we insert an arrowhead in the appropriate direction. Within the pictorial representation, the elements  $v_i$  of  $V$  will be referred to as points (vertices or nodes). The pair  $(x, y)$  where  $y \in \mathcal{L}(x)$ , will be called an arc of the digraph. The set of arcs of a digraph will be denoted by  $U$ .

Having defined a digraph in the abstract, we now proceed to make further definitions in terms of the pictorial representation, rather than in terms of sets and function mappings. A sub-digraph of a digraph  $D$ , is defined

to be a digraph whose points are a subset of those of  $D$  and consisting of all the arcs of  $D$  joining these points. A partial digraph of a digraph  $D$ , is any digraph whose points and arcs are a subset of those in  $D$ . In fig. 1.211 we have an example of a digraph  $D$ , a subdigraph  $D_s$  of  $D$  and a partial digraph  $D_p$ , also of  $D$ .  $D_s$  and  $D_p$  contain all the points of  $D$  except for  $v_1$ .



Two points  $x, y$  within  $D$  are said to be adjacent if

- 1/. they are distinct and
- 2/. there exists an arc going from  $x$  to  $y$  or from  $y$  to  $x$ .

If there is an arc  $u$  going from  $x$  to  $y$ , then we say that  $x$  is the initial and  $y$  the terminal points of that arc. We may also say that  $u$  is incident from  $x$  and incident to  $y$ .

Similarly two arcs  $u, v$  are said to be adjacent if

- 1/. they are distinct and
- 2/. they have a point in common.

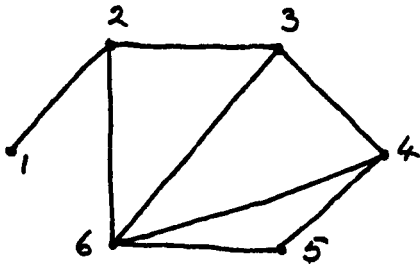
A loop of a digraph is an arc whose terminal and initial points are identical. We say that a digraph contains parallel lines if there is more than one arc in the same direction joining any two points. In the example of fig. 1.2111, points  $v_1$  and  $v_5$  are adjacent in all three figures, but  $v_4$  and  $v_5$  are adjacent only in  $D$  and  $D_5$ . There also is a loop in both  $D$  and  $D_5$  centred on  $v_4$ .

We go on to define a path as a sequence of arcs  $(u_1, u_2, u_3, \dots, u_k)$  of a digraph such that the terminal point of each arc coincides with the initial point of the succeeding arc. A path is simple if it does not use the same arc twice and composite otherwise. If a path does not use the same point twice, it is said to be elementary. If a path meets in turn the points  $\{x_1, x_2, x_3, \dots, x_k\}$  we can represent it by  $[x_1, x_2, x_3, \dots, x_k]$ , or if there is no ambiguity by  $\mu[x_1, x_k]$ . The length of a path  $(= (u_1, u_2, \dots, u_k)$  say), is the number of arcs in the sequence,  $l(\mu) = k$ . In  $D$  of fig. 1.211, if  $\mu = [v_1, v_2, v_5, v_3, v_4]$  then  $l(\mu) = 4$ .

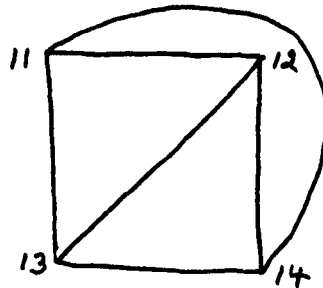
## 1.22 Graphs.

A digraph is said to be a graph if for every  $(x,y) \in U \Rightarrow (y,x) \in U$  where  $U$  is a digraph. Thus every pair of adjacent points are connected by two oppositely directed arcs. To simplify the representation of such arcs, we shall set up a rule that two adjacent points (of a graph) will be joined by a single continuous line (to be called a line or segment or edge) which carries no arrowhead. A graph is connected if for every pair of distinct points, there is a path going from one to the other. If the graph is disconnected, then each of its connected subgraphs is called a component. A graph is said to be complete (or maximally connected) if every point is adjacent to every other.

A circuit is a path  $(u_1, u_2, \dots, u_k)$  where  $u_k$  is adjacent to  $u_1$ . A simple circuit is one where the path is elementary. The degree of a point  $v_i$ , denoted by  $d(v_i)$ , is equal to the number of points adjacent to  $v_i$ .



a connected graph



a complete graph

(fig. 1.221)

In the graphs of fig. 1.221, we have an example of a connected graph and one of a complete graph. Either of  $[v_2, v_3, v_4, v_5, v_6]$  or  $[v_{11}, v_{12}, v_{14}]$  could be taken as an example of a simple circuit. We also have  $d(v_1) = 1$ ,  $d(v_6) = 4$  and  $d(v_{13}) = 3$ .

A partial graph is said to cover a graph if the partial graph contains all the points in the graph. A labelled graph is one where each point is associated with a unique positive integer. The graphs considered in fig. 1.221 were labelled graphs. It is usual when labelling graphs to number the points from one upwards. The point which is labelled  $j$  will be referred to as  $v_j$ . Consider a labelled graph  $G$  and suppose we wish to permute the labels of  $G$ . We denote the new labelling of the points by means of a superscript. Thus if the point originally labelled 11, i.e.  $v_{11}$ , was to be relabelled 27, we would refer to it by  $v_{11}$ , in terms of its old labelling or by  $v_{11}'$ , in terms of the new. If this point was to be relabelled, 6 say we could refer to it by  $v_6^1$ . We can thus write  $v_{11} \equiv v_{11}' \equiv v_6^1$ . It may also be desirable when relabelling a graph, to discuss the new label of a point. We denote the new label of a point  $j$  by  $\text{lab}(j)$ . In the example just described, we can thus write either  $v_{11} \equiv v_{11}'$  or  $\text{lab}(11) = 27$ . We may have within a labelled graph, labelled lines  $u_1$  to  $u_{b_r}$ , where

br is the number of lines within the graph . If we have not labelled the lines but we wish to refer to one in particular, we can do so by means of its two end points  $v_i, v_j$ , i.e. by  $(i - j)$  . Suppose we wish to refer to a partial graph within a labelled graph and that this partial graph contains the points  $v_1, v_2, v_3, \dots, v_s$  . We would do so by means of  $\{v_1, v_2, v_3, \dots, v_s\}$  .

An associated cost graph is one where every line  $u_i$  ( or  $(j - k)$  ), has associated with itself a cost parameter  $c(i)$  (or  $c(j,k)$  ) . Thus we can thus refer to the cost of the total graph which is equal to  $\sum_{i=1}^{br} c(i)$

or  $\sum_{j=1}^2 \sum_{k=1}^2 c(j,k)$  . We may also refer to the cost of a

partial graph or in particular, to the cost of a path  $[u_1, u_2, u_3, \dots, u_k]$  which will be equal to  $\sum_{j=1}^k c(j)$  .

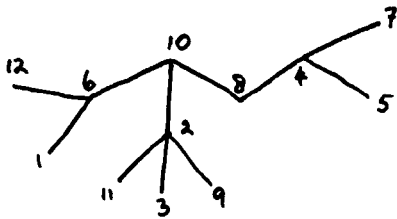
### 1.23 Trees.

A tree  $T$ , is a connected graph which has no circuits. A rooted tree <sup>or r-tree</sup> is one which has one and only one of its points designated as a root point ( or simply root). An ordered rooted tree is defined within a halfplane such that all its points lie on one side of a cut, which meets the tree at the root. An ordered rooted tree can be abbreviated to an o-r tree, or with a slight change in the juxtaposition of its first two letters, a r-o tree which, phonetically, becomes a e-tree. A star (at a point) is the set of all lines incident to that point. Two stars are said to be adjacent if they have a line in common. A star will be multi-membered if it contains more than two lines and a tree with no multi-membered stars will be called a chain.

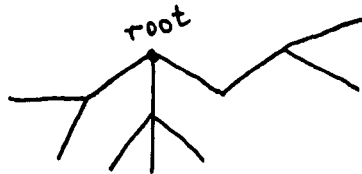
Every point of a r-tree has associated with itself a generation number which has the value equal to the length of the path between it and the root ( i.e. if  $gen[j]$  stands for the generation number of the point  $j$ , then we have  $gen[j] = l(\mu[v_j, root])$ ). A point adjacent to only one other point can be referred to as an end point (of the tree). We define a partial ordering on the points of the r-tree by means of the symbols  $>$ ,  $<$ . We write  $v_i > v_j$ , i.e.  $v_j$  precedes  $v_i$ , if  $gen[j] < gen[i]$  and  $\mu[v_i, v_j]$  does not include the root point. We can thus define a sub-

tree at  $v_j$ ,  $S_{v_j}$ , of  $T$  as being that subgraph of  $T$  which includes  $v_j$  and all points that succeed it.  $v_j$  is designated as the root of  $S_{v_j}$ .

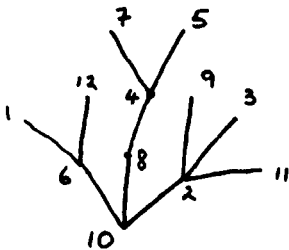
For any point  $v_k$ , the set of points adjacent to it and succeeding it, is called a package of which it,  $v_k$ , is called the (package) head. If  $v_k$  is the head of a package consisting of  $v_l, v_m, \dots, v_p$  then  $S_{v_l}, S_{v_m}, \dots, S_{v_p}$  are all branches of the subtree at  $v_k$ .



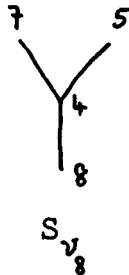
tree,  $T$



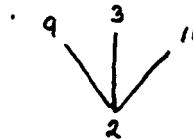
r-tree,  $T_r$



e-tree,  $T_e$



$S_{v_8}$



a package ( head at  $v_2$  )

Within the cut plane wherein the  $\rho$ -tree lies, we can define a sign convention where positive sense ( +ve sense ) is a clockwise motion around a point . Thus within a package, a point  $v_p$  has a +ve and/or -ve neighbour or neither.  $v_q$  is the +ve neighbour if on traversing from  $v_p$  in the +ve sense around the package head , the next point within the package is  $v_q$  . A -ve neighbour is similarly defined . A  $\rho$ -chain is a chain which is ordered and rooted at an end point.

A binary  $\rho$ -tree is one whose every package contains two elements. An example of a binary  $\rho$ -tree is the monkey puzzle tree sort. A bifurcating  $\rho$ -tree is one whose packages contain at most two elements or lines: similarly for trifurcating  $\rho$ -trees and so on. A labelled tree is a labelled graph which is a tree. We shall assume in general , that all  $\rho$ -trees are labelled ones unless otherwise stated. A pendant  $\rho$ -tree is a  $\rho$ -tree whose end points ( or pendants ) only are labelled. A practical example of one is a list processing tree list.

Let us finally define a directed  $r$ -tree ,  $T_D$  on a digraph  $D$  , to be a partial digraph of  $D$  where every point of  $T$  lies on an elementary path whose initial vertex is unique and is called the root.

### 1.23.1 Some Properties of Trees and Graphs.

Any tree,  $T$ , will have a diameter denoted by  $\text{diam} ( T )$ , which is the length of the longest path in  $T$ . Similarly a  $\epsilon$ -tree  $T_\epsilon$ , will have a height,  $\text{hght}(T_\epsilon)$  which is equal to  $\text{Max } l ( \mu[\text{root}, v_i] )$ , where  $v_i$  is any end point of  $T_\epsilon$ . This can be defined recursively as

$$\text{hght} ( T_\epsilon ) = \text{Max} \{ \text{hght} ( S_{v_j} ) \} + 1 ,$$

where  $v_j$  is adjacent to the root of  $T_\epsilon$ .

Within a connected graph, there will always be at least one path between any two points. Define  $\mu_m [v_i, v_j]$  as  <sup>$\alpha$</sup>  ~~the~~ shortest path between  $v_i$  and  $v_j$ . Then if we consider all  $\mu_m$  between all pairs of points, there will be a longest one which will be called the maxmin path. It can also be described as that path which yields

$$\text{Max} \{ l ( \mu_m [v_i, v_j] ) \} \quad \begin{array}{l} \text{over all pairs } v_i, v_j \\ \text{in the graph.} \end{array}$$

A spanning tree of a graph is any tree that covers the graph. A minimal spanning tree of a cost associated graph is that spanning tree whose cost is a minimum. A mushrooming r-tree,  $T_m$ , of a graph is a spanning  $r$ -tree and derives its name from the method of its construction (Chpt. 4.41). For a given root point,  $v_r$ , the path length  $l ( \mu [v_r, v_i] )$ , for any  $v_i$  of the mushrooming  $r$ -tree, is equal to the maxmin path length within the graph

i.e. for all mushrooming r-trees whose root is  $v_r$  we have

$$l(\mu[v_r, v_i]) = \mu_m[v_r, v_i] \quad \text{within the graph.}$$

A mushrooming r-tree with maximum height,  $T_m$ , is that mushrooming r-tree of the graph which yields the maximum value for  $\text{hght}(T_m)$ .

A maximal spanning directed r-tree is a directed r-tree which contains every point reachable from the root by means of a path in the digraph.

Lastly, given a graph  $G$  and a spanning tree on it,  $T_s$ , we define the cotree,  $C$ , as being that set of lines in  $G$  which do not appear in  $T_s$ . We thus have  $T_s \cup C = G$ . ( We can, if necessary, extend this definition so as to include the cotree within a digraph of a maximal spanning directed r-tree. )

### 1.23.2 Functions on Trees.

For a given  $\epsilon$ -tree,  $T_\epsilon$ , and its set of points  $V$ , we can associate certain further one-to-one functions mapping  $V$  into itself. These functions will be dependent upon the configuration of  $T_\epsilon$ . As a consequence of the definition of precedence and packages, we can define a function  $\text{below}(x)$ , where  $x \in V$ , as having the value of that package head within which  $x$  lies. This is not quite complete as we have not mentioned the predecessor of the root. Thus the definition of  $\text{below}(x)$  is completed by making  $\text{below}(\text{root})$  equal  $\text{root}$ . From the definition of +ve and -ve neighbours, we can define the functions  $\text{pos nbr}(x)$  and  $\text{neg nbr}(x)$  as we did for  $\text{below}(x)$ . If a point  $v_j$  has no positive neighbour, we put  $\text{posnbr}(j) = 0$  and also make  $\text{posnbr}(\text{root}) = 0$ .

It is easy to see that if we were given only the values of  $\text{below}(x)$ , for all  $x$ , we would be able to reconstruct the  $r$ -tree. And with the addition of the values of  $\text{posnbr}(x)$  or  $\text{negnbr}(x)$ , again for all  $x$ , we would be able to reconstruct the corresponding  $\epsilon$ -tree. In the next chapter we use these functions in order to discuss the best ways of storing (the configuration of) a  $\epsilon$ -tree within a computer.

Combining the definitions of  $\text{below}(x)$  and

posnbr(x) , we can derive the following new function ,  
pos succ (x), standing for the positive successor of x ,  
and it is equal to

- 1/. posnbr(x) , if posnbr(x)  $\neq$  0 , else
- 2/. pos succ(below(x)) , if below(x)  $\neq$  x , else
- 3/. x ( x being the root ) .

Conversely neg succ(x) can be similarly defined . Another  
function which can be derived from below(x) and posnbr(x)  
is rd(x) , the 'right or down' function . This is equal to

- 1/. posnbr(x) , if posnbr(x)  $\neq$  x , else
- 2/. x , if x is the root , else
- 3/. - below(x) .

The rd function is slightly different from previously de-  
fined ones for two reasons . Firstly , it carries more in-  
formation by the inclusion of the +ve or -ve sign. Second-  
ly , the rd function could not be used , as it stands, re-  
peatedly. That is , below<sup>n</sup>(x) has some meaning (where n is  
a positive integer ) , whereas we could not always be sure  
as to the existence of rd<sup>n</sup>(x) , for we have not defined  
rd(y) , where y is a -ve integer .

The above definitions were of terms or  
functions which , one could think ~~about~~ , moved across or  
down the e-tree . That is , repeated applications ( with  
suitable changes of sign in the case of the rd function )

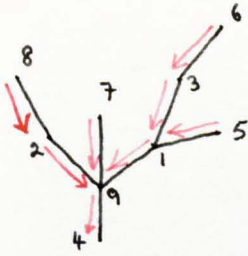
would yield the root or the right hand side of a package .  
We now define a function ,  $\text{above}(x)$  , which is, in a sense,  
the opposite to  $\text{below}(x)$  , and it is equal to

- 1/. 0 , if  $x$  is an end point of the  $e$ -tree, else
- 2/.  $y$  , where  $\text{neighb}(y) = 0$  and  $\text{below}(y) = x$  .

We can now combine  $\text{above}(x)$  and  $\text{negsucc}(x)$   
into another function called the 'left and up' function or  
 $\text{lu}(x)$  , which will be equal to

- 1/.  $x$  , if  $\text{above}(x) = 0$  and  $\text{negsucc}(x) = \text{root}$ , or
- 2/.  $-\text{below}(\text{negsucc}(x))$  , if  $\text{above}(x) = 0$  , else
- 3/.  $\text{above}(x)$  .

$\text{lu}(x)$  is similar to  $\text{rd}(x)$  , in that an application of  $\text{lu}(x)$   
will yield +ve or -ve numbers . As  $\text{lu}(x)$  is dependent upon  
 $\text{above}(x)$  , we see that repeated applications of this func-  
tion will move us up and leftwards across the  $e$ -tree . As  
an example of the above described functions, consider the  
 $e$ -tree in fig.1.23.21. The  $e$ -tree is represented by black  
lines and the result of the application of each of the func-  
tions on a point is indicated by red lines . Where there is  
a minus sign on the diagram , this means that the result of  
the application of the function on that particular point  
was minus the point indicated . Table 1.23.22 shows the  
result in applying all the mentioned functions on the  $e$ -tree  
of fig. 1.23.21 .



below(x)



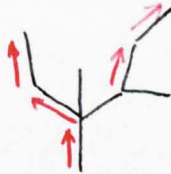
pos nbr(x)



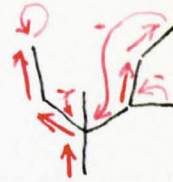
pos suc(x)



rd(x)



above(x)



lu(x)

( figs. 1.23.21 )

j	gen[j]	below( $v_j$ )	pos nbr( $v_j$ )	pos succ( $v_j$ )	rd( $v_j$ )	neg nbr( $v_j$ )	neg succ( $v_j$ )	above( $v_j$ )	lu( $v_j$ )
1	3	9	0	4	-9	7	7	3	3
2	3	9	7	7	7	0	4	8	8
3	4	1	5	5	5	0	7	6	6
4	1	4	0	4	4	0	4	9	9
5	4	1	0	4	-1	3	3	0	-1
6	5	3	0	5	-3	0	7	0	-9
7	3	9	1	1	1	2	2	0	-9
8	4	2	0	7	-2	0	4	0	8
9	2	4	0	4	-4	0	4	2	2

( table 1.23.22 )

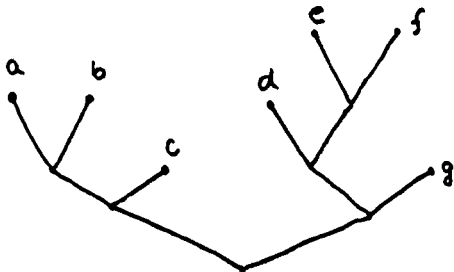
### 1.3 A Short Note.

Early in the work, an interesting relationship was found between binary pendant  $\varphi$ -trees and multifurcating  $\varphi$ -trees. Consider a set  $A = \{a, b, c, \dots, t\}$  and an operation on  $A$  which is neither commutative nor associative. Let us denote this operation by  $\odot$ . In algebra, we call the result of a certain number of operations a monoid. Define a simple monoid to be an element of  $A$ . If  $u, v$  and  $w$  are monoids, let  $w = (u \odot v)$ , where

$$u = [(a \odot b) \odot c] \text{ and}$$

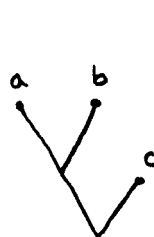
$$v = \{[d \odot (e \odot f)] \odot g\},$$

where  $a, b, c, d, e, f$  and  $g$  are elements of  $A$ . With the monoid  $w$ , we can associate the binary pendant  $\varphi$ -tree in fig. 1.31 and the monoids  $u$  and  $v$  have representation as in fig. 1.32 [1, page 161].



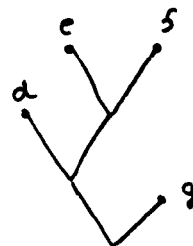
$w = (u \odot v)$

( fig. 1.31 )



$u$



( fig. 1.32 )



$v$

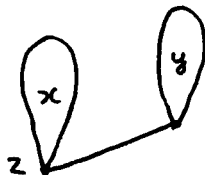
It can be seen that the operation  $\odot$  represents, in the  $\wp$ -tree, a join of the two structures corresponding to the two symbols on either side of it. The join is accomplished by inserting a new root which is adjacent to the two other roots, taking into account the sense of rotation.

The counting series for the number of binary pendant  $\wp$ -trees with  $n$  pendants (or labelled end points) is given by  $\frac{1}{2n+1} \binom{2n+1}{n}$ . The point of interest is that this series also represents the number of multifurcating  $\wp$ -trees with  $n$  points. An investigation was carried out to find the relationship, if any, between these two sorts of  $\wp$ -trees.

It was discovered that the monoids could be interpreted to represent multifurcating  $\wp$ -trees. This representation is unique. Suppose  $x$  and  $y$  are two monoids (simple or otherwise) and let  $z$  be the first element to appear in  $x$ , when reading from left to right. In the case where  $x$  is simple we have  $x = z$ . Further let  $x$  and  $y$  be represented by  and , these being their  $\wp$ -tree representation. Then the pictorial representation

of the  $\wp$ -tree  $(x \odot y)$

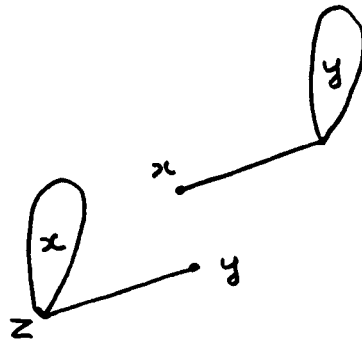
can be defined uniquely as :



Consider the case when :

$x$  is simple (i.e.  $x \equiv z$ ) , we obtain

$y$  is simple , and we obtain



both  $x$  and  $y$  are simple, we have



In other words, the multifurcating  $\varrho$ -tree ( $x \odot y$ ) is created by joining the root point of  $y$  , to the root point of  $x$  by means of an extra line , placed in the most positive position of the package of which  $z$  is the head . Similarly we can , for any multifurcating  $\varrho$ -tree produce its corresponding monoidal expression .

Hence given any monoid we can associate with it a unique  $\varrho$ -tree and vice-versa . Thus any binary pendant  $\varrho$ -tree can be associated with a unique multifurcating  $\varrho$ -tree and vice-versa. The author managed to find algorithms which, given a  $\varrho$ -tree in the one representation, evaluated the corresponding  $\varrho$ -tree in the other representation. Initially, this was accomplished by reference to their common monoidal expression, but later a direct transformation was achieved. Examples of some corresponding multifurcating and binary pendant  $\varrho$ -trees appear in fig. 1.33 .

( When writing the monoidal expression, the operator  $\odot$  may be omitted without any loss of clarity, e.g.  $(a(b\ c)).$  )

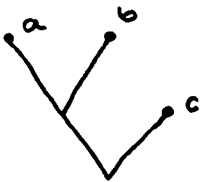
pendant binary  
 $\varrho$ -trees

monoidal  
 expression

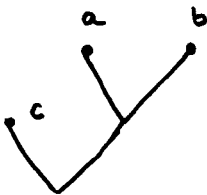
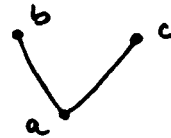
multifurcating  
 $\varrho$ -trees



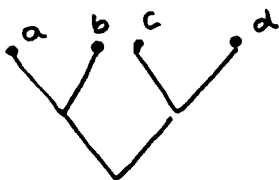
$(a\ b)$



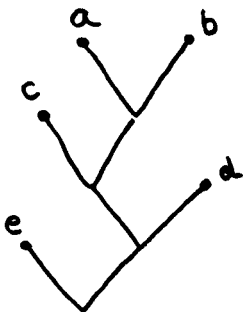
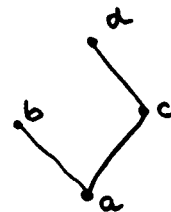
$((a\ b)\ c)$



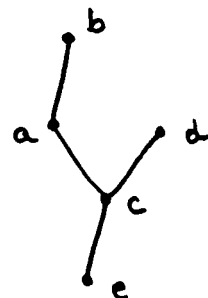
$(c(a\ b))$



$((a\ b)(c\ d))$



$(e((c(a\ b))\ d))$



( table 1.33 )

## II REPRESENTATION AND MANIPULATION .

---

### 2.1 Representation.

The type of representation of a graph ( or tree ) within a computer is going to be governed, to a certain extent , by the use it is put to in any given problem. We may be interested in a graph only for its existence. That is , it may be necessary to enumerate the graphs or examine them sequentially , testing whether they have some property or not . The representation in this case can be made extremely compact . On the other hand , we may require the graph to store information , where the configuration of the graph determines the relationship between pieces of information , it may be desirable to manipulate this graph into another configuration or vary the pieces of information attached to each node of the graph . In this case, the representation has not only to be reasonably compact , but has to have the virtue of being easily manipulated and each node and its corresponding piece of information has to be easily accessible.

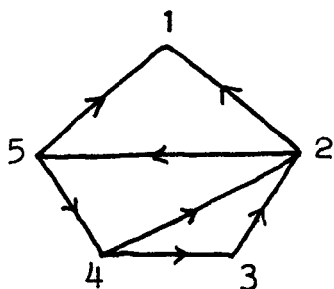
## 2.11 Theoretic Representation.

### 2.11.1 Graphs and Digraphs.

The instinctive and most obvious way to represent a graph or digraph, is to indicate the presence or absence of a line or arc, between all pairs of points. This is achieved in the adjacency (or associated) matrix,  $A$ . If we have a  $z$ -point digraph,  $D$ , then we associate with it, the  $z \times z$  matrix,  $A$ , where  $a_{ij} (\in A) = 1$ , if there is an arc going from  $v_i$  to  $v_j$  and  $a_{ij} = 0$  otherwise. For a graph,  $A$ , will be symmetrical. Another common representation is the incidence matrix,  $M$ . In this matrix, rows represent points and columns are to be associated with arcs. Thus we have

$$\begin{aligned} m_{ij} &= 1, \text{ if } v_i \text{ is the initial point of } u_j, \\ &= -1, \text{ " " " " terminal " " " " ,} \\ &= 0, \text{ if there is no incidence between them.} \end{aligned}$$

It can be seen that the second representation is more space consuming. Examples of the two representation will be found in fig. 2.11.11.



digraph D

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

adjacency matrix A

(fig. 2.11.11)

$$M = \begin{bmatrix} -1 & 0 & 0 & -1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & -1 & 0 & -1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & -1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & -1 & 1 \\ 0 & -1 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

incidence matrix M

We note as before , that if the digraph has  $z$  points and  $br$  arcs where  $br > z$  , then the number of elements in  $M$  exceeds those in  $A$  . We see that  $A$  , even if it is a more compact representation than  $M$  , is still very wasteful in so much as that unless the digraph is complete,

there is redundant information . A more compact representation would result , if we were to indicate either the presence or absence of an arc , but not both . This leads to the listed pairs representation . Here we represent the digraph as a list of pairs of numbers :-

$(a_1, b_1)$  ,  $(a_2, b_2)$  ,  $(a_3, b_3)$  , ..... ,  $(a_{br}, b_{br})$  where

$(a_i, b_i)$  denotes the presence of an arc in the digraph

joining  $v_{a_i}$  to  $v_{b_i}$  . We note that if the digraph is a graph,

every arc will occur twice (i.e. there will occur both  $(x,y)$  and  $(y,x)$  ) . Thus the list will be halved ,if we suppress

one of the pairs (of arcs for the graph) . This may be done by stipulating that for all pairs  $(a_i, b_i)$  , we have  $a_i < b_i$  .

Let us assess the amount of space required to store a graph uniquely . The incidence matrix requires  $z \times br$  elements.

The adjacency matrix requires  $z \times z$  elements . The listed pairs uses only  $4 \times br$  elements and this is reduced to  $2 \times br$  elements , when the redundant pairs are suppressed.

We must inevitably sacrifice something in making the representation smaller and smaller : in this case it is clarity . Within A and M , we could immediately not only visualize the digraph, but very quickly find out , say, the number of arcs emanating from any point. This cannot be said for the listed pairs representation.

We can make one more reduction in the representation which requires  $4 \times br$  elements, to one which requires only  $(br + z)$  elements. This is achieved by shuffling the list about and suppressing some further redundant information. <sup>Let us</sup> ~~suppose we~~ stipulate a further ordering on the initial elements in the pairs. That is, we order the list of pairs lexicographically with respect to  $a_k$ , the first elements in all the pairs. This ordered list will contain sublists, all of which contain the same initial number.

Consider each sublist separately e.g.

$(a_k, b_{k_1}), (a_k, b_{k_2}), (a_k, b_{k_3}), \dots, (a_k, b_{k_r})$ . There are  $r$  pairs in this sublist, which means that  $v_{a_k}$  is connected to  $r$  other points. This sublist could be shortened to

$a_k ; r ; b_{k_1} ; b_{k_2} ; b_{k_3} ; \dots ; b_{k_r}$ . The first element is the first number in all the pairs, the second indicates the number of lines incident from it, followed by a further  $r$  numbers, which are the labels of those points to which  $v_{a_k}$  is adjacent. We come now to the only slightly tricky part. If we now join all these sublists up, beginning to end, in their original order and also suppress  $a_k$  and  $r$  of each sublist, we are left with a string of numbers. We can read sense into this apparent chaos by defining another list  $st_1, st_2, st_3, \dots, st_z$ . This list indicates

the starting position ,  $st_u$  , in the main list , where we look for the labels of those points adjacent from any point  $v_u$  . For example , if we wish to find all points adjacent from point  $v_p$  , we note the value of  $st_p$  , and look in the main list at all the elements in the  $st_p^u$  position to the  $(st_p^u - 1)$  position . Consider the example in fig.2.11.11. The fully listed pair representation would be

(2,1), (5,1), (5,4), (4,3), (3,2), (2,5), (4,2) .

Rearranging this we get

(2,1), (2,5), (3,2), (4,2), (4,3), (5,1), (5,4)

where the sublists are underlined. In the last step this becomes

1, 5, 2, 2, 3, 1, 4 ;

and 1, 1, 3, 4, 6 ;

to be called the branches list representation.

Let us call the main list , the branch list and the subsidiary list , the rowstart list . Thus in the previous example, if we wish to find all the points adjacent to  $v_4$  , we note the values

branches[rowstart[4]] to branches[rowstart[5] - 1 ]

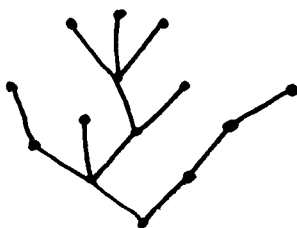
which is branches[4] to branches[5] , giving us the values 2 and 3 . We note that  $st_1 = st_u$  . We thus have to always check for the possibility of no outward directed arcs in the case of a digraph . In connected graphs this problem naturally does not occur.

### 2.11.2 Unlabelled Trees.

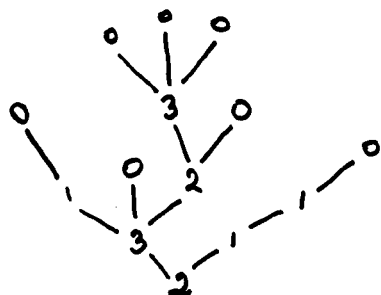
There is as yet no known method of representing uniquely and compactly a <sup>(unlabelled)</sup> tree . However  $\epsilon$ -trees were represented by the author as a string of  $z$  numbers, the  $\epsilon$ -tree having  $z$  points . Recapulating from the authors M.Sc. dissertation, [12] , another ordering is defined on all the points of the  $\epsilon$ -tree such that

- a) a point with lower generation number precedes a point with a higher one and
- b) within a package , the more +ve of two points has precedence and finally
- c) of two packages with the same generation number , the points within the one which has a more +ve package head have precedence over the others.

Now consider each point in turn starting from the root ( by means of the above ordering ) and write down the number of lines , within the package of which it is the head . This will then represent , by definition , a  $\epsilon$ -tree uniquely and can be translated back into the pictorial representation very simply .



( fig. 2.11.21 )



As an example, consider the unlabelled  $\varrho$ -tree in fig. 2.11.21 , the root point being the lowest point in the configuration. We can within the same configuration insert at each point of the  $\varrho$ -tree, the number of lines in the package of which the point is the head . This is indicated in fig. 2.11.21 next to the  $\varrho$ -tree . If we now read the numbers at each node by generations , starting from the root and from left to right , we obtain the following sequence : 2, 3, 1, 1, 0, 2, 1, 0, 3, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0 ; We can shorten the string, without any ambiguity resulting, by suppressing the last 5 zeroes and the string becomes :

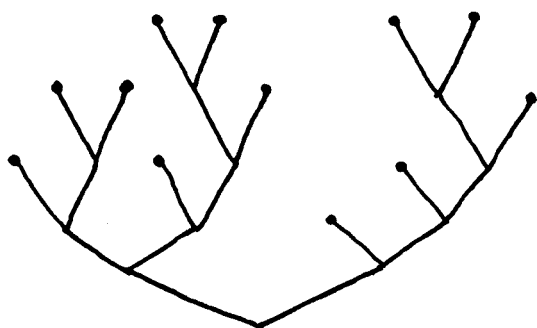
2, 3, 1, 1, 0, 2, 1, 0, 3 ;

Consider an unlabelled binary pendant  $\varrho$ -tree and its monoid representation . As it is unlabelled the monoid will comprise of opening and closing brackets and some symbol, an asterisk say , to denote an end or pendant point . As an example consider the pendant  $\varrho$ -tree of fig. 2.11.22 . Suppose we let the integer one denote open brackets and a zero stand for the asterisks . We can now represent the monoid as a string of zeroes and ones, having suppressed the closing brackets (as they are redundant). Thus we have a binary representation for pendant  $\varrho$ -trees.

(((\*(\*\*))(\*(\*\*)\*)))(\*(\*(\*\*)\*)))

1110100 101100 0 10101100 0

= 11101001011000101011000

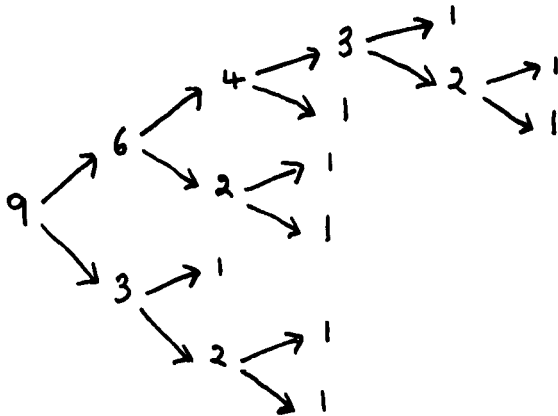


(fig. 2.11.22)

This results in a much bulkier representation than the earlier one ( for the same multifurcating  $\epsilon$ -tree ) but it can be easily extended to include labelled pendant  $\epsilon$ -trees and hence labelled multifurcating  $\epsilon$ -trees, by simply inserting the label of the point instead of a zero.

It is interesting to note that in the above mentioned binary representation, we have one more zero than ones . Thus if we write down randomly , zeroes and ones in succession ( noting only that sequence which starts with a one ) and stop as soon as we have more zeroes than ones, we shall have generated a random pendant or multifurcating  $\epsilon$ -tree. However this is not much use as we cannot guarantee the size of the tree, i.e. we cannot use this method as it stands, to generate random  $\epsilon$ -trees of  $z$  points.

H.I.Scoins solved this difficulty by developing a method whereby random pendant  $\varrho$ -trees of  $z$  pendants are randomly generated, from which of course multifurcating  $\varrho$ -trees can be obtained. The method is a partitioning type one. We randomly partition  $z$  into two parts  $z_1$  and  $z_2$ . These two parts are further randomly partitioned into four parts and so on. At each partition, we must obtain two nonzero parts. The connection will be seen immediately from the following example. Suppose  $z = 9$  and we partition this into 3 and 6. Three is further partitioned into 2 and 1, say, and six into 2 and 4. Diagrammatically we may get



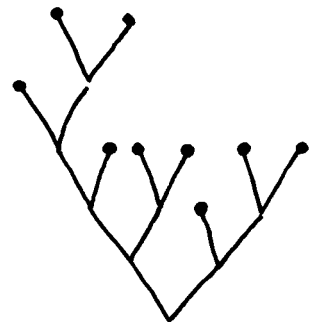
This immediately becomes the pendant  $\varrho$ -tree as in fig. 2.11.23.

whose monoidal representation is

$((((*(**))*)(**))(*(**)))$ .

And hence we have obtained a random

$\varrho$ -tree of 9 points.



( fig. 2.11.23 )

### 2.11.3 $\rho$ - Trees.

It can be seen that any  $\rho$ -tree will be uniquely determined , if we specify  $\text{below}(j)$  and  $\text{posnbr}(j)$  for all  $v_j$  within the  $\rho$ -tree . Other pairs of functions which will deter<sup>mine</sup>~~mine~~ a  $\rho$ -tree uniquely are:-  $\text{below}(j)$  and  $\text{negnbr}(j)$ ,  $\text{below}(j)$  and  $\text{pos succ}(j)$ . The last pair of functions being that pair which was used to represent a  $\rho$ -tree in [12].

The only other representation used within this thesis was the pair of functions  $\text{rd}(x)$  and  $\text{lu}(x)$ . That is a  $\rho$ -tree was represented by the values  $\text{rd}(j)$  and  $\text{lu}(j)$  for all  $v_j$  in the  $\rho$ -tree. It is true that  $\text{rd}(j)$  on its own would have been sufficient to represent a  $\rho$ -tree uniquely, but in order to facilitate the searching and manipulation of the  $\rho$ -tree , the added function  $\text{lu}(j)$  was used.

### 2.1.2 Computer Representation.

In general the graphical representation for any given problem will indicate the relationship between various pieces of information. The information may be associated with the points or it may be the function of pairs of points, in which case it is assigned to the corresponding lines. In both cases the lines of the graph merely indicate the presence or absence of some relationship between pairs of points. A final solution to the problem will consist of some subset of the lines connecting some, if not all, of the points. Thus in manipulating the graph, we should be primarily interested in the nodes and the relationship between them. Within the computer this means being able to locate any particular point, and both quickly and easily finding its immediate neighbour. This leads us to choose the adjacency type representation rather than the incidence type. The word type is deliberately used, the author not only uses the adjacency matrix, but also the derived listed pairs and branches list representation.

### 2.12.1 Digraphs and Graphs.

We shall only deal with the representation of digraphs and  $\varphi$ -trees , as these are the pictorial representations of the applications in Chapters 3 to 6. We mentioned previously that a graph could be represented by two lists :- a branches list and a rowstart list . In the applications we regard the graph as a digraph , insomuch as that we note both  $(v_i, v_j)$  and  $(v_j, v_i)$  if  $v_i$  is adjacent to  $v_j$  . That is, the array ( or list ) branches comprises  $2 \times br$  elements. The two lists are stored in integer arrays branches[ 1:2Xbr ] and rowstart[1:z]. In order to make it easier to follow the working of the procedures the author introduced a third array nrinrow [1:z] which indicated the number of points to which each point is adjacent.

It would not be out of place to note that if it was a digraph, which we were actually storing and not a graph, it would still be very easy to search by rows but not by columns. That is ,we could easily find out all the points to which  $v_j$  is joined, simply by scanning row  $j$  . However, to find those points which join  $v_j$  would be a different matter altogether. This would necessitate scanning the complete matrix or list.

### 2.12.2 $\rho$ -Trees.

If we wish to represent a rooted tree, this can be done as mentioned before , in the array below [1:z], where the tree contains z points. We would store in below[j] the value of that point which is adjacent to  $v_j$  and precedes it . We make below [root]:= root. However a  $\rho$ -tree requires another array, in order to planarize or order the tree, and this is posnbr[1:z] . These two arrays used together are sufficient for any work to be done on trees . H.I. Scoins in his method of solving the transportation problem uses only below[j] as he does not require his tree to be ordered . However the author, in Chapter 5 , improved upon this by altering the representation of the  $\rho$ -tree using the rd, lu arrays in order to facilitate the movement up and down the  $\rho$ -tree.

As mentioned before, in order to move up the tree, given the below, posnbr representation , would require repeated scans of the list in order to climb up one generation at a time. This is very time consuming. However if we use the rd, lu representation there is no trouble because we can find the upper left of any point (by lu[j]) and then move across the package by successively using rd [j].

## 2.2 Manipulation within the Computer.

### 2.21 Graphs.

The detailed manipulation required for each application is described in the appropriate chapters. However , there are a few standard techniques and manipulations common to most of them. One is the input of data. The best method of presenting the data had to be found and then fed into the program . Assuming that we use the branches list representation it was found that the data punched in the following form was most appropriate :-

```
z ; br ;  
r1 ;    b11 ; b12 ; b13 ; ... ; b1r1 ;  
r2 ;    b21 ; b22 ; b23 ; ... ; b2r2 ;  
. . . . .  
ri ;    bi1 ; bi2 ; bi3 ; ... ; biri ;
```

The column  $r_i$  indicates the number of elements in row[i], followed by the labels of the  $r_i$  adjacent points. Output was in a similar manner . There is one drawback in this method of representing the data for a given problem, ready for input into the machine . It is necessary to know the number of lines in the graph and also the degree of every point.

As stated in Chapter 1, the main building block , common to all the applications in this thesis, is the spanning tree ( in one form or another ). An algorithm for obtaining a spanning tree is as follows :-

Assign one of the points of the (di)graph as root point. This now becomes the below of all points adjacent to it. They in turn become the belows of all points adjacent to them and not encountered before (this is easily verified if we initially make  $\text{below}[j] := 0$  for all  $j$ , and then filling them in as each point is encountered. Thus a point which has not been met before will have its below still equal to zero) . At the end the below array will be non-zero, unless a point is not connected by a path to the root point.

Another manipulation encountered in Chpt.4 is the systematic reduction of a graph, by the removal of one point at a time . The problem is not as simple as it looks , as we have to cater for the possibility that the removal of one point results in the previously connected graph becoming disconnected . Within the same chapter , it was required to alter the labelling of a given graph. That is, we are given a labelled graph (in the branches list re-

presentation) and an integer array containing a permutation vector and we wish to obtain the branches list representation of the resulting permuted labelled graph. This and other exercises in graph manipulation are best described in their respective chapters and appendices.

## 2.22 Trees.

Two types of manipulation occur within this work. One was, given a tree within a computer, to find the most efficient way of obtaining the information attached to any given node or sets of nodes . In this case the interest is in the ability of being able to go up and down the tree. The other type of manipulation was the physical alteration of the configuration of the tree itself. That is, to alter the relationship between points as denoted by the presence or absence of lines between them. This is usually accomplished by the deletion of the lines of the tree one at a time and other suitable lines added in . As explained in the last subchapter the discussion on the manipulation of graphs and trees is best left to the individual chapters and the accompanying Appendices.

### III      TOPTREE .

-----

#### 3.1 Introduction.

The Travelling Salesman Problem stated simply is this : given an associated cost graph, find a circuit covering the graph which has its associated cost as a minimum . This circuit , not necessarily unique , will be known as a minimal tour or minimal solution , where a tour or solution to the problem is any circuit which covers the graph. The problem has just been stated in the more general form. Usually the lines obey the triangular inequality law , i.e. no two sides together are smaller than a third , and hence the minimal solution will be a simple circuit . The problem may be considered as a special assignment or even as a transportation problem . However these two approaches are very impractical due to the number of necessary constraints.

In practical terms, the graph may be a road map, obeying the triangular inequality law, where the points represent towns and the lines represent the roads connecting them. The problem may then be defined as that of having to visit each town , keeping the amount of travelling to a minimum ( hence the name given to the problem ). It follows intuitively, that a salesman would not return to a previously visited town , thus making the tour or circuit simple.

There are two standard methods of finding a minimal solution. One is by Integer Programming [31] and the other by Dynamic Programming [23]. However both methods are very limited by storage space and time. In general, if the number of towns or points is over 13, neither of the above methods is practicable. In particular, both these methods were used in this work, the programs being written for a KDF9 computer, and the maximum number of towns solvable was 11.

Thus there is every incentive for finding a method of solving larger problems, and failing this, of obtaining tours whose cost is very close to that of the minimal solution. This is what Toptree does. It is a heuristic method which specifies a small subset of the set of possible solutions, and then searches through this subset in order to find the best possible solution within this subset.

In testing the method on randomly generated data and comparing the Toptree results with that obtained by either Integer or Dynamic Programming, it was found that in over 50 % of the cases, the Toptree solution lay within 2 % of the minimal solution. Another advantage of Toptree is that, while searching through the subset, it notes and outputs the best solution found so far. Thus the process may be terminated at any point.

The method suggested itself when a comparison was made between a route for the minimal solution of the problem and a minimal spanning tree for that same graph. It was noticed that in almost all the cases examined, the minimal solution had at least half the lines of a minimal spanning tree within its route. Hence the idea developed of manipulating the tree into a chain and consequently obtaining a simple circuit (by joining the end points of the chain).

The next few pages are devoted to an explanation of the derivation of a minimal spanning tree, followed by a description of how it can be reduced to a chain and hence a tour. This is followed by a brief discussion on the preparation of data, and how Toptree solutions compare with the minimal solutions. We shall, within this and subsequent chapters, assume a graph ( or digraph ) to have  $z$  points and  $br$  lines ( or arcs ).

### 3.2 The Minimal Spanning Tree ( Mintree ).

Given a connected graph with an associated cost matrix , there exists a partial connected graph covering the original graph whose cost is a minimum. With a little thought it can be seen that this subgraph is in fact a tree, hence its name: the minimal spanning tree or mintree for short. Kruskal , in his paper [ 27 ], proved this and provided a single algorithm to achieve it . Loberman and Weinberger elaborated further (in [30]) with flow charts and so on , two algorithms based upon Kruskals ideas. The author translated both ideas into Algol and finding that one of them was quicker and less space consuming , improved upon it and published it as a procedure in [32]. Here again the method of obtaining mintree was itself an exercise in tree manipulation.

### 3.21 Description of Mintree.

The procedure Mintree obtains the minimal spanning tree and describes it in the below representation ( i.e. as a r-tree ) . This in no way restricts or hinders the obtaining of the spanning tree. The final result is that we have the minimal spanning tree rooted at some point. The technique is to search through the graph repeatedly, looking for suitable members of this tree. The method is as follows:-

- 1a) Search for the least cost edge of the graph,  $G$  . This now forms a r-subtree  $J_1$  , say.
- 1b) Search for the next smallest cost edge ( after having excluded the edge of 1a) from further consideration: in the computer this was done by putting its cost equal to  $\infty$  ) .
- 1c) Test if this edge ( from 1b ) is adjacent to  $J_1$  .  
if it is: attach it to  $J_1$   
if not : this edge forms a new r-subtree  $J_2$  .
- 2) Exclude the last edge chosen, from further consideration ( i.e.  $\infty$  )

- 3) Search for the next smallest cost edge and test for one of the four following cases :
- a) It forms a circuit in one of the  $r$ -subtrees.  
Do nothing.
  - b) It is adjacent to a line in only one of the  $r$ -subtrees. Attach this edge to the  $r$ -subtree.
  - c) It is adjacent to a line in two  $r$ -subtrees. Use this edge to join the two  $r$ -subtrees into one.
  - d) It is adjacent to no  $r$ -subtree. The edge then forms a new  $r$ -subtree.
- 4) Go back to 2).
- 5) The loop 2), 3), 4) is repeated until  $z-1$  edges have been picked, resulting in one connected minimal spanning tree ( mintree ).

Theorem 3.21. If the lines of  $G$  have distinct costs then mintree is the minimal spanning tree of  $G$ .

Proof (due to Kruskal):- Let the lines of mintree be called  $l, l_1, \dots, l_{z-1}$  in the order they were chosen. From the hypothesis that the lines of  $G$  have distinct costs, it is easily seen that the construction of mintree proceeds in a unique manner.

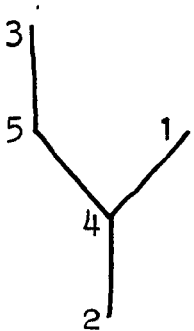
Suppose that mintree is not a minimal spanning tree and let  $l_\mu$  be the first line from mintree which differs from that of a minimal spanning tree,  $T^*$ . Then  $l_1, l_2, \dots, l_{\mu-1}$  are in  $T^*$ .  $T^* \cup l_\mu$  must have exactly one loop which contains  $l_\mu$ . This loop must also contain some line  $e$  which is not in mintree. Then  $T^* \cup l_\mu - e$  is a tree. But according to the construction  $\text{cost}(e) > \text{cost}(l_\mu)$ . Therefore the cost of  $T^* \cup l_\mu - e$  is less than that of  $T^*$ . This contradicts the definition of  $T$  and hence indirectly proves that  $\text{mintree} \equiv T^*$ . ( If the costs of the lines are not distinct, mintree would not be unique: it will be one of the possibly many spanning trees of  $G$  . )

### 3.3 Theoretical Description of Toptree.

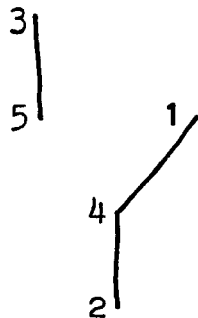
Having produced a mintree, it is now required to manipulate it into a tour. The main criteria is to keep as many lines of mintree as possible in the resulting tour. Thus the assumption is made that the points which have only two lines incident to them within mintree, stand an excellent chance of having the same two lines incident to them within a minimal solution. The problem arises of what action to take, with those points incident to more than two lines. Toptree solves this by reducing these multi-membered stars, by the deletion of their members, one by one, until all points are incident to at most two lines. At each deletion, Toptree adds a new line elsewhere, so as to keep what was mintree connected. The final tree is a chain, whose end points are then joined to form a simple circuit or tour. Here is the method in more detail.

Let  $T_m$  denote a mintree, obtained for a given cost associated graph.  $T_m$  will consist of a connected set of stars, some of which will contain more than two lines. Each multi-membered star is examined in turn and is reduced by deleting its members one by one, to contain only two lines. When a line has been deleted from a star,  $T_m$  will become disconnected. The resulting two subtrees of  $T_m$  will

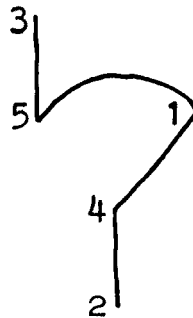
be rejoined by means of a line from the cotree. A proviso is made, to be explained a few paragraphs later, that this new line will be such that the number of members in any star of the reconstructed  $T_m$  will not be increased. This can only be accomplished if the line were to join the end point of one subtree to an end point of the other. The final choice being that line which has the least cost. This process is carried out on all the stars until  $T_m$  results in a chain. As an example, consider the following tree in fig. 3.0.



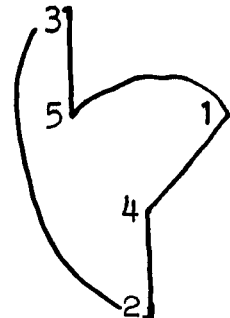
(fig. 3.0)



(fig. 3.1)



(fig. 3.2)



(fig. 3.3)

Suppose fig. 3.0 represents a mintree for a given 5 point graph. There is a multi-membered star with its head at  $v_4$ . Thus one of  $(4-5)$ ,  $(4-2)$ , or  $(4-1)$  must be removed, so that  $v_4$  will have only two lines incident to it. Suppose that  $(4-5)$  is removed. This results in the

two subtrees  $\{3, 5\}$  and  $\{2, 4, 1\}$  of fig. 3.1. They are re-joined by the smallest cost associated line between end points of the two subtrees . The full choice of lines is (3-1), (3-2), (5-1) or (5-2). Suppose (5-1) is chosen. The resulting tree is shown in fig. 3.2 . The tree is a chain and so the two end points are joined together , by means of (2-3) , to form a tour as in fig. 3.3 . Another two tours would have resulted if we had deleted (4-1) or (4-2), instead of (4-5), and repeated the above process.

There is one point to note. Unless mintree is a chain, whereby only one tour is obtained, there will be many ways of reducing  $T_m$  to a chain . This will result in a subset of tours,  $S_m$  . Thus we have to find a method of ordering the deletions within a star , and between the stars themselves, so as to obtain, for a given mintree, the maximum number of tours possible.

Before we go on to discuss the ordering of the stars and their members, let us briefly study the position when  $T_m$  has just been disconnected. We asserted that the join of the two subtrees has to be accomplished by means of a line connecting their end points . Consider the situation where this proviso was relaxed . While reducing a star,

$s_1$ , say, we would be able to increase the members of another star,  $s_2$ , say. When we come to reduce  $s_1$ , after having reduced  $s_1$  to a duo-membered star, there would be nothing to stop us from increasing  $s_1$  again. Hence this could be repeated endlessly, without either reducing simultaneously to duo-membered stars.

### 3.31 The Ordering of the Stars.

Consider the mintree of fig. 3.0. It had one multi-membered star at  $v_4$  which contained three lines. We showed that there are three different ways of reducing the star to one which contains only two lines. This in fact was done by deleting each of the three members of the star. Suppose that there had been four lines in the star at  $v_4$ . Then there would have been an initial choice of four lines to delete, resulting in a three-membered star at  $v_4$ . Thus there will be altogether  $4 \times 3$  possible ways of reducing this four-membered star to one which contains only two lines. Using a similar argument, we can see that a star containing  $n$  members, can be reduced to a duo-membered star in  $\frac{n!}{2}$  different ways.

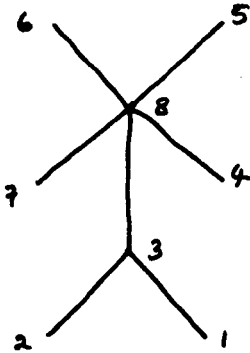
Now if there had been two non-adjacent, ( the importance of which will be explained later ) multi-membered stars in  $T_m$ , containing  $m, n$  lines respectively, we can calculate the number of ways of reducing  $T_m$  to a chain. Consider the  $m$ -membered star. There will be  $\frac{m!}{2}$  ways of reducing it to a duo-membered star without affecting the other star in any way. When we come to reduce the  $n$ -membered star we find that this can be reduced to a duo-membered star in  $\frac{n!}{2}$  different ways. Here there will be

$\frac{m!}{2} \times \frac{n!}{2}$  different ways of reducing  $T_m$  to a chain. Similarly if we reduce the  $n$ -membered star first, followed by the other, we obtain a further  $\frac{m!}{2} \times \frac{n!}{2}$  ways of reducing  $T_m$  to a chain. Hence there will be altogether  $2 \times (\frac{m!}{2} \times \frac{n!}{2})$  different ways of reducing  $T_m$  to a chain.

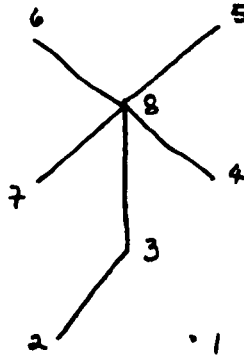
The point is thus illustrated, that not only do we have to take the ordering of the deletions within a package into account, but also the ordering of the packages themselves. For if  $T_m$  were to contain three multi-membered stars  $s_1, s_2, s_3$  say, there would be no necessity for the subset of tours  $S_m$ , obtained by reducing first  $s_1$ , then  $s_2$  and finally  $s_3$ , to be equal to  $S_m^1$ , the subset obtained by reducing  $s_1$  first, then  $s_3$  and finally  $s_2$ . Suppose that we have a mintree  $T_m$  which contains  $r$  multi-membered stars. Then there will be  $r!$  different ways of ordering these stars. Let us further suppose that each of these  $r$  multi-membered stars contains  $s_i$  ( $i = 1, 2, \dots, r$ ) lines. Then it follows that the maximum number of different ways of reducing  $T_m$  to a chain and hence a tour is given by

$$r! \prod_{i=1}^r \left( \frac{s_i!}{2} \right) = \frac{r!}{2^r} \prod_{i=1}^r s_i! \quad \text{----- ( 3.3 A )}$$

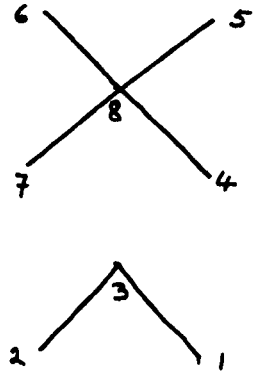
### 3.31.1 Adjacent Multi-membered Stars.



(fig. 3.4)



(fig. 3.5)



(fig. 3.6)

Consider the above mintree in fig. 3.4.

$T_m$  contains two adjacent multi-membered stars at  $v_3$  and  $v_8$ .

Using the theory developed in the last subchapter and (3.3A)

we would expect at most  $\frac{2}{4} \times 3! \times 5! = 360$  ways of reducing

$T_m$  to a chain. However, there are far fewer tours in  $S_m$

due to the adjacency of the two multi-membered stars. Con-

sider the reduction of the star at  $v_3$ . We can delete either

(3-1) or (3-2), and obtain two subtrees similar to fig.

3.5. The resulting reconnected tree will contain a five-

membered star at  $v_8$ . Hence either deletion leads to  $\frac{5!}{2}$

possibly different chains. However, the third possible de-

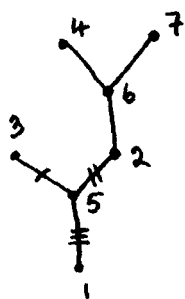
letion at  $v_3$  is (3-8), the connecting line between the two

multi-membered stars. When this is deleted, we not only reduce the star at  $v_3$  but also the one at  $v_8$ . The two disconnected subtrees are depicted in fig.3.6. When rejoined, the reconstructed tree now contains a four-membered star at  $v_8$ . Hence this deletion of (3-8) at  $v_3$  leads to only  $\frac{4!}{2}$  further chains. Thus deleting the lines at  $v_3$  first, we obtain altogether  $\frac{5!}{2} + \frac{5!}{2} + \frac{4!}{2} = 132$  possibly different chains. ( This is to be compared with  $3 \times \frac{5!}{2} = 180$  possibly different chains if the stars had not been adjacent). Reducing the star at  $v_8$  first, followed by that at  $v_3$ , we obtain by similar argument, 108 possibly different chains. The grand total of possibly different chains in this case is thus 240 .

### 3.4 Practical Description of Toptree.

Within the context of this thesis, it was necessary to both root and order  $T_m$ , the mintree, so that it could be represented and manipulated within a computer. Hence stars become packages ( with the addition of the line joining the package head to the point below it ) and chains become  $\rho$ -chains . A procedure called process was written ( see App.1.1 ), which, when called, yielded all the points of a  $\rho$ -tree, one by one . This was used to order the packages of  $T_m$  so that they could be sequentially reduced. The method can be better illustrated by discussing a small example.

Consider the mintree of seven points in fig. 3.7. There are two multi-membered packages within  $T_m$ , one at  $v_5$  and the other at  $v_6$ . Let  $T_m$  be rooted at  $v_1$  and ordered as in the figure . Repeated application of the procedure process will yield the points of the  $\rho$ -tree in the following sequence:- 1, 5, 3, 2, 6, 4, 7 . The first multi-membered package to be considered, will thus be the one at  $v_5$  . In general, the ordering within a package of which  $v_p$  is the head , will be firstly  $lu(v_p)$ , followed by its positive neighbours, and finally the below of the package head. Thus in the package at  $v_5$  the ordering of the deletions will be (5-3), (5-2) and (5-1): on the figure



(3.7)



(3.8)



(3.9)



(3.10)



(3.11)



(3.12)



(3.14)



(3.13)



(3.15)



(3.16)



(3.17)



(3.18)



(3.19)

this is denoted by single, double and treble strokes through the respective lines . Thus (5-3) is the first line to be deleted, resulting in the new  $\epsilon$ -tree of fig. 3.8 , where the line (3-4) has been inserted. We regard this  $\epsilon$ -tree afresh and repeat the above process. That is we sequentially order the points of the  $r$ -tree , find the first multi-membered package, and this will be at  $v_6$  . We again order the lines within the package and delete the first which will be at (6-4) . We obtain the  $\epsilon$ -tree of fig. 3.9 . We again repeat the process of ordering the packages within this new  $\epsilon$ -tree and find that it has no multi-membered package. We deduce that it is a  $\epsilon$ -chain , connect its end points together and obtain a tour.

Having obtained a  $\epsilon$ -chain, we go back one step (to the previous  $\epsilon$ -tree in the sequence, fig.3.8) , and re-examine that  $\epsilon$ -tree. We choose the next line in that  $\epsilon$ -tree to delete and in this case it will be (6-7). As a result we obtain the  $\epsilon$ -chain of fig. 3.10. We return, again to the  $\epsilon$ -tree if fig. 3.8 and delete the next and last line, (6-2), to obtain the  $\epsilon$ -chain of fig. 3.11 . When we return again to the  $\epsilon$ -tree in fig. 3.8 , we find that there are no more deletions to make , and hence we go back another step to the  $\epsilon$ -tree in fig. 3.7. As mentioned just now, we search for the next line to delete and in the case of fig. 3.7 it will be (5-2) .

This results in the  $\rho$ -tree of fig. 3.12. The same procedure is applied to fig. 3.12 as was to fig. 3.8 and we obtain three further  $\rho$ -chains, those of figs. 3.13, 3.14, and 3.15 . However, it is worth noting that the ordering within the package at  $v_6$ , is different. Previously (6-4) was the first to be deleted , in this case it is (6-7). Having obtained the  $\rho$ -chain of fig. 3.15 we return to fig. 3.12 and again back to fig. 3.7.

This time we delete the third and last line (5-1). We obtain the  $\rho$ -tree in fig. 3.16, and from it the three  $\rho$ -chains of figs. 3.17 , 3.18 , and 3.19. When we finally return to fig. 3.7 we notice that there are no more lines to delete and so the algorithm stops.

We have obtained nine, possibly different,  $\rho$ -chains and hence tours from the  $T_m$  of fig. 3.7 . This fits in with the theory of the previous subchapter where for one ordering of the non-adjacent packages we calculated a maximum of  $\frac{1}{2} ( \frac{3! \times 3!}{2} ) = \frac{36}{4} = 9$  possible  $\rho$ -chains. If we assigned a different point of  $T_m$  as the root ( one of  $v_4$  or  $v_7$  ), we could obtain a firther nine  $\rho$ -chains, but these need not necessarily be the same nor indeed different, from the ones just obtained.

While going through this last example, it will have been noticed that the deletion of a line , causes a new  $\varrho$ -tree to be constructed. All these  $\varrho$ -trees have to be either stored or easily reconstructed . For when we have exhausted all possible deletions from one  $\varrho$ -tree, ( as in fig. 3.11 ) we have to go back one step to the previous  $\varrho$ -tree ( as from fig. 3.8 to fig. 3.7 ). The storage of the  $\varrho$ -trees is solved by keeping them in a dynamic nesting type stack. That is, we have a stack of  $\varrho$ -trees where the bottom one is the first to have been examined (in the previous example it corresponds to fig. 3.7) and one of whose lines has been deleted to yield the second from bottom  $\varrho$ -tree ( this corresponds to either fig. 3.8, 3.12 or 3.16 ) and so on. Thus the  $\varrho$ -tree at the top of the stack, the current  $\varrho$ -tree, has been formed by the deletion of one of the lines of the  $\varrho$ -tree below it.

The current  $\varrho$ -tree,  $T_g$  , is examined to see if there are any multi-membered packages . If it has, we delete the first line in the first package. This will form a new current  $\varrho$ -tree, which is placed on top of the stack , pushing all the previous ones down one (like the bullets in a cartridge holder). If the current  $\varrho$ -tree has no multi-membered packages, we form the tour, note both it and its total cost, and then reject the current  $\varrho$ -tree.

Thus the stack 'pops up' one position and the  $\epsilon$ -tree below becomes the current  $\epsilon$ -tree. While examining  $T_e$ , we may note that it has a multi-membered package and yet not have a next line to delete, i.e. we have exhausted all possible lines to delete within  $T_e$  ( this will correspond to the  $\epsilon$ -tree in fig. 3.8 after having returned to it from the  $\epsilon$ -tree in fig. 3.11 ). We reject this  $\epsilon$ -tree and 'pop up' the next  $\epsilon$ -tree in the stack and continue the analysis. This corresponds to the mechanism of finding a  $\epsilon$ -chain and rejecting it.

Thus there is a continuous stack of  $\epsilon$ -trees, the top one of which is being examined. The stack increases, if the current  $\epsilon$ -tree yields another by the reduction of one of its multi-membered packages, or decreases if the current  $\epsilon$ -tree is either a  $\epsilon$ -chain or an exhausted  $\epsilon$ -tree. In the example of fig. 3.7, the first  $\epsilon$ -tree in the stack will be that of fig. 3.7. The second  $\epsilon$ -tree will be either of figs. 3.8, 3.12, or 3.16. The third  $\epsilon$ -tree will be one of the nine chains. The process terminates when the bottom or first tree has been exhausted of all possible deletions.

### 3.5 The Number of Tours in the Subset $S$

As mentioned previously, if  $T_m$  has  $r$  stars containing  $s_\lambda$  ( $\lambda = 1, 2, \dots, r$ ) members, the number of different tours for one ordering of the packages is






$$\frac{1}{2^r} \prod_{\lambda=1}^r s_\lambda!.$$

(We see that the number of tours in the subset,

$S_m$ , depends not only on the number of multi-membered stars but also on their 'density'.) As we shall be concentrating on the  $\rho$ -tree representation of  $T_m$ , the above formula becomes :

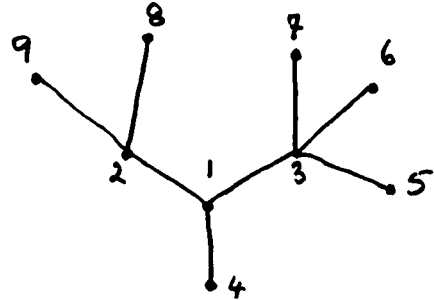
$$n(S_m) = \frac{1}{2^r} \prod_{\lambda=1}^r (p_\lambda + 1) \quad \text{----- ( 3.4 A)}$$

where  $n(S_m)$  is the number of possibly different tours in the subset  $S_m$  and  $p_\lambda$  is the number of members in package (1). We see that  $p_\lambda$  is one less than the value of the corresponding  $s_\lambda$ . A simple table will illustrate the number of different ways of reducing a package to one containing one line only. If  $c(p_n)$  stands for the number of chains ( containing only 2 lines ) derivable from a package containing  $n$  lines, we have  $c(p_n) = \frac{(p_n + 1)}{2}$

n	1	2	3	4	5	6
type of package						
$c(p)$	1	3	12	60	360	2520







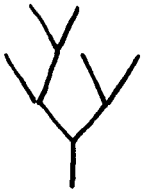

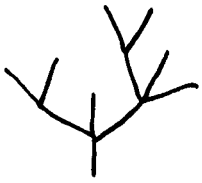
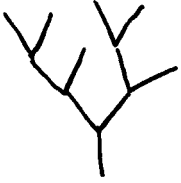





As mentioned in Ch. 3.3, the formula (3.3A) and hence (3.4A), will not hold for adjacent packages. Thus a configuration of adjacent packages has to be tackled by hand, in order to evaluate its  $n(S_m)$ . Consider the complex configuration of fig. 3.521.

There are three adjacent packages containing two, two and three lines respectively. If they were non-adjacent we would expect, for one ordering of the



( fig. 3.521 )

packages,  $\frac{3!}{2} \times \frac{4!}{2} \times \frac{3!}{2} = 108$  possible reductions. However consider what actually happens in more detail. First let us delete (1-2). This results in a configuration with only one package of three lines : giving twelve  $\epsilon$ -chains. If we delete (1-3), we obtain a configuration with two non-adjacent multi-membered packages, each containing two lines: resulting in nine further  $\epsilon$ -chains. Finally, when we delete (1-4), we obtain a configuration with a 2- and a 3-membered package: yielding 36  $\epsilon$ -chains. Hence the total number of  $\epsilon$ -chains possible for this configuration is  $12 + 9 + 36 = 57$ , which is quite a reduction from 108 . Using similar techniques we obtain the results in the following table (3.522).

package configuration	no. of chains	package configuration	no. of chain	package configuration	no. of chain
	7		27		57
	17		15		297
	37		39		117
	91		46		108
	288		537		186

(table 3.522)

### 3.6 Obtaining the Minimal Solution.

With the published problems, [ *page 73* ] there was no trouble in obtaining their minimal solutions as they were usually included, speculative or otherwise. However, it was necessary to obtain the minimal solution, as well as the Toptree one, for the random data problems. Thus a dynamic programming procedure was written to solve the problem . It was based on the paper by Held and Karp [ 23 ] . Due to the limitations of store and time, the program, an Algol procedure, could solve problems of up to twelve points ( or towns ) only. An indication of time taken is as follows:

z	6	7	8	9	10	11	12
time (min.)	15s.	25s.	65s.	5	27	110*	7hrs.*

\* estimated.

It was found, that for large  $z$  , i.e.  $>9$ , this was still taking too long , as there were many sets of data to analyse, so an Integer Programming ' program based on Gomory's method, was used . This sometimes failed

---

' The program was in KDF9 User Code (i.e. machine code) hence its speed, and was written by J.S. Clowes of this laboratory.

to reach a solution in a reasonably short time , and so the program was terminated and solved by Dynamic Programming.

Even so, the number of problems actually tackled, was limited by the speed of the above two programs. Toptree, on average, took from two to twenty seconds for a graph of up to twelve points.

### 3.7 Data Preparation and a Short Note.

At first, the data was to be generated by using a random number generator to fill in a symmetric cost matrix . This was rejected as it , the cost matrix, would have no connection with reality : an obvious consequence would have been that the shortest path between any two points, would not always have been the line between them. Hence a slightly longer and more complicated method was used, which by construction, assured the 'planarity' of the cost matrix and hence the corresponding graph. The method was to generate  $z$  pairs of  $(x,y)$  random coordinates within a fixed area. The distances between the  $z$  points were computed and inserted into the  $(z \times z)$  cost matrix.

Because the method of data preparation placed the  $z$  points, randomly within a given area, the author was able to test Hammersley and Handscombs formula of

$$l_A = k_A \times (z \times A)^{1/2} \text{ ----- ( 3.7 A )}$$

where,  $l_A$  = length or cost of minimal tour,

$z$  = number of points in graph,

$A$  = the area,

for the Travelling Salesman Problem [ 22 ].

Their argument for obtaining the above formula (3.7A) was as follows. The length of the tour depends upon the area  $A$  and upon the density of towns in this area  $\left(\frac{z}{A}\right)$ . Let  $l_A \propto A^\alpha \left(\frac{z}{A}\right)^\beta$ . Dimensional analysis shows that  $\alpha - \beta = \frac{1}{2}$ . Now if we multiply the area by  $c$  and keep the density constant, we shall be multiplying the tour length by  $c$ . Hence  $\alpha = 1$  and we obtain

$$l_A = k_A \times (z \times A)^{\frac{1}{2}}.$$

The formula was tested on 463 set of data with  $z$  varying from five to eleven, and it was found that  $k_A = 0.9$  with standard deviation of 0.139. This seemed to indicate that there might be some validity to the argument and hence (3.7A).

( Assuming a similar argument, we may obtain the formula

$$l_M = k_M \times (z \times A) \text{ ----- ( 3.7 B )}$$

where,  $l_M$  = length of mintree and

$k_M = k$  for mintree.

It was found that  $k_M = 0.635$  with a better standard of deviation of 0.109. It was decided, as a natural extension, to write

$$l_T = k_T \times (z \times A) \text{ ----- ( 3.7 C )}$$

for Toptree solutions, and it was found that  $k_T = 0.915$  with a standard deviation of 0.140. )

### 3.8 Analysis of Results.

463 sets of random data were prepared with the number of towns varying from 5 to 11. The first table, table 3.81, shows how the Toptree solutions were distributed as regards their approximation to the minimal solution. For example, of the 71 problems with 8 points in the graph, 42 Toptree solutions had equal lengths with the minimal solution, five were between 0 and 0.5 % of the minimal solutions and so on. If we look at the last column, this indicates the analysis on all the random data together. We see that the majority of Toptree solutions lie between 0 and 5 % of the minimal. In fact a better picture is given by the table of (3.82), the frequency distribution table. This indicates in percent of the total number of problems solved, the distribution of the percentage difference between the Toptree and minimal solutions, e.g. for the 75 problems containing 9 points, 66 % Toptree solutions were minimal, 73 % were within 2 % of the minimal, 85 % were within 5 % of the minimal and all lay within 10 % of the minimal. All the problems taken together are layed out on the last line.

The Toptree method was also applied to published problems. A table follows (table 3.83), and in the time limit column it will be noted that both Dantzig's

(  $42 \times 42$  ) and the Spic (  $34 \times 34$  ) problems were prematurely terminated.

The Spic problem has not been published before, so the cost matrix is given on the next page. Proctor and Gamble initiated an advertising campaign, in order to sell a soap product of that name. They asked the public to draw the shortest route through 34 towns in England. A solution which shared equal first prize gave the tour length as 1240 miles . The firm in question refuse to disclose any information, hence the tentative assumption of this being the minimal tour length.

Upon studying the Barachet problem, it was noted that had a different root point been chosen, Toptree would have given the minimal solution. This strengthens the suggestions that if the problem is reasonably small, or has an overall simple configuration ( and hence yields a small subset of Toptree tours ) a greater chance of obtaining the minimal solution is achieved by varying the root point to different end points of  $T_m$  .

The lower triangle of the Spic cost matrix is given split into two parts due to the size of the page. The bottom triangle is to be attached to the right of the incomplete triangle above it. The size of the cost matrix is  $(34 \times 34)$  .

70;  
165; 105;  
120; 85; 185;  
25; 61; 165; 91;

30; 100; 170; 150; 45;  
70; 145; 215; 170; 105; 50;  
55; 20; 120; 90; 45; 80; 130;  
80; 40; 85; 125; 80; 95; 145; 40;  
100; 50; 155; 35; 70; 115; 155; 55; 95;

150; 125; 50; 210; 155; 160; 215; 130; 85; 190;  
130; 55; 150; 65; 85; 145; 185; 70; 95; 30; 180;  
35; 100; 195; 135; 50; 40; 45; 75; 115; 105; 185; 140;  
50; 40; 115; 115; 45; 70; 115; 25; 30; 80; 110; 95; 85;  
160; 100; 40; 160; 175; 175; 225; 110; 80; 125; 90; 110; 200; 110;

90; 85; 115; 165; 100; 85; 145; 75; 50; 130; 85; 140; 115; 50; 120;  
50; 110; 215; 120; 60; 55; 55; 90; 130; 105; 205; 130; 20; 100; 200; 135;  
20; 90; 180; 110; 40; 35; 65; 70; 110; 80; 180; 110; 25; 70; 170; 105; 30;  
140; 85; 25; 160; 135; 155; 205; 95; 60; 130; 155; 120; 170; 90; 35; 85; 190;  
90; 160; 225; 210; 120; 60; 60; 145; 140; 180; 190; 200; 90; 120; 220; 105; 110;

20; 50; 145; 110; 20; 50; 100; 30; 60; 80; 140; 95; 55; 30; 140; 80; 65;  
75; 50; 95; 140; 70; 80; 130; 50; 15; 100; 85; 105; 100; 25; 95; 35; 125;  
50; 60; 170; 70; 25; 80; 105; 50; 90; 50; 175; 80; 60; 75; 150; 125; 55;  
40; 80; 155; 155; 65; 35; 85; 65; 70; 115; 130; 125; 65; 40; 150; 50; 80;  
70; 90; 200; 75; 50; 85; 90; 80; 115; 70; 205; 100; 55; 100; 180; 155; 40;

115; 115; 215; 55; 90; 135; 135; 105; 145; 75; 240; 105; 110; 140; 200; 190; 80;  
115; 75; 60; 160; 115; 120; 165; 75; 35; 125; 50; 130; 145; 65; 75; 45; 165;  
115; 45; 95; 110; 100; 145; 190; 60; 65; 75; 125; 55; 140; 80; 55; 115; 155;  
115; 45; 65; 125; 120; 125; 175; 60; 35; 90; 85; 90; 140; 55; 55; 90; 150;  
65; 25; 130; 75; 35; 80; 130; 20; 75; 40; 150; 50; 90; 45; 125; 100; 90;

80; 75;180; 40; 55;110;130; 65;125; 40;205; 65; 80; 95;165;155; 80;  
90; 25;130; 60; 60;115;165; 45; 65; 25;150; 25;115; 65;100;110;110;  
150;125; 75;210;150;140;190;125; 85;180; 25;180;180;100;100; 75;200;  
230;200;130;285;230;230;275;200;155;250; 80;250;255;180;165;150;275;

160;  
95;190;

40;120;110;  
90; 70;125; 60;  
45;145;140; 40;100;  
60;125; 75; 40; 55; 85;  
55;175;150; 70;130; 30;105;

110;200;195;105;155; 65;160; 50;  
130; 40;150; 95; 40;125; 85;155;185;  
125; 70;200; 95; 80;105;120;135;150; 85;  
125; 40;175; 90; 50;105;100;135;165; 50; 35;  
65;110;145; 40; 70; 40; 80; 70; 90;100; 65; 65;

75;165;170; 65;120; 30;115; 40; 40;145;110;125; 50;  
90;100;175; 65; 75; 55; 95; 85;100;100; 50; 65; 25; 55;  
170; 65;180;130; 80;175;120;200;235; 50;140; 95;145;205;150;  
250;130;250;210;155;255;200;280;310;125;200;160;225;280;225; 80;

→→→

z - number of points		5	6	7	8	9	10	11	ALL
N -number of problems		60	60	60	71	75	57	80	463
0		44	38	28	42	48	23	37	260
0 - 0.5		/	/	/	/	/	/	/	/
0.5 - 1.0		/	1	2	5	2	5	3	18
1.0 - 1.5		2	1	3	3	1	2	5	17
1.5 - 2.0		4	2	2	3	4	3	4	22
2.0 - 2.5		1	2	/	3	2	3	4	15
2.5 - 3.0		2	/	2	2	3	2	5	16
3.0 - 3.5		/	2	1	3	2	2	2	12
3.5 - 4.0		1	/	/	/	1	1	3	6
4.0 - 4.5		/	3	2	2	/	1	1	9
4.5 - 5.0		1	3	4	1	1	3	2	15
5.0 - 6.0		/	/	3	1	/	1	2	7
6.0 - 7.0		2	4	6	/	6	3	2	23
7.0 - 8.0		/	2	5	1	3	5	3	19
8.0 - 9.0		1	1	/	1	/	1	2	6
9.0 -10.0		1	1	2	2	2	1	1	10
10.0-11.0		/	/	/	1	/	1	1	3
11.0-12.0		1	/	/	/	/	/	2	3
12.0-13.0		/	/	/	/	/	/	1	1
13.0-14.0		/	/	/	/	/	/	/	/
14.0-15.0		/	/	/	1	/	/	/	1
15.0- 100		/	/	/	/	/	/	/	/

(table 3.81)

number of problems with this percentage difference  
between the Top tree & Minimal Solutions. (/  $\equiv$  None).

z	N	% difference between Toptree and Minimal soln.											
		0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	15
5	60	73	73	83	88	90	92	92	95	95	97	98	100
6	60	63	65	70	73	77	87	87	93	97	98	100	
7	60	47	50	58	62	63	73	78	88	97	97	100	
8	71	59	66	75	82	86	90	92	92	93	94	97	100
9	75	66	67	73	80	84	85	85	93	97	97	100	
10	57	40	49	58	67	72	79	81	86	95	96	98	100
11	80	46	50	61	73	79	83	85	88	91	94	95	100
ALL	463	56	60	68	75	79	84	86	91	95	96	98	100

( table 3.82 )

name of Problem	Solution distances					
	z	Minimal	Toptree	% diff.	Time	Mintree
[19] Dantzig	42	699	729	4.4	2 Hrs.*	591
[23] Held/Karp	25	1711	1783	4.2	3 min.	1240
[17] Croes	20	246	260	5.8	3 min.	154
Spic	34	1240	1280	3.3	90 min.*	1040
[5] Barachet	10	378	381	0.8	19 sec.	201
Austrian	12	1745	1859	6.5	40 sec.	1284

\* prematurely thrown off.

( table 3.83 )

### 3.9 Conclusion.

It was found that Toptree, as programmed in Algol for the KDF9 and using the tree techniques as developed within this thesis, was a highly efficient method for finding a tour, which was reasonably close to the minimal solution. On top of that was the added advantage of terminating the process when a solution which satisfied certain prior conditions had been found (e.g. tour length to be less than a certain quantity, or after a certain time had elapsed ). It seems pure coincidence as to whether a minimal solution exists in  $S_m$ , the subset of Toptree tours. It was also noted that the lengths of the tours within the subset were not extravagantly large compared to the minimal or best in the subset. In particular it was noted that Toptree did very well on the large, published problems.

In Chpt. 3.7 Hammersley and Handcombs formula was extended to Toptree and Mintree solutions but no conclusion was arrived at by the author. The author had hoped to be able to predict from the values of  $k_n$ ,  $k_m$ ,  $k_T$  and either Mintree and/or Toptree distances, upper and lower bounds on the minimal solution for any given problem.

IV THE MINIMISATION OF THE  
BANDWIDTH OF A MATRIX .  
-----

4.1 General Discussion.

The problem of minimising the bandwidth of a matrix occurs in the solution of large sets of simultaneous equations . In civil engineering, for example , it is frequently desirable to find the displacements and rotations of the joints of a building frame or bridge trusses under stress. This leads to the solution of large sets of simultaneous equations :  $A \underline{x} = \underline{b}$  ----- ① , which expresses the joint equilibrium equations relating the joint displacements to known applied loads . There may be anything up to 50 joints in a frame , leading to 150 or 300 variables,  $x_i$  . Each joint is usually connected to perhaps 4 or 8 others and hence the matrix A will have a large number of zero elements . If one were to calculate the density of a matrix as the number of non-zero elements divided by the total number of elements , it will be seen that A will have density of the order of 5 % . Sparse matrices are not peculiar to civil engineering only . In electrical engineering the model might be a network of again the same number of joints and also again each joint ( or terminal ) may be connected to only 4 to 8 others.

Thus there occur many problems which lead to the solution of simultaneous equations, where the matrix concerned is highly sparse. If the number of variables,  $z$ , is small, the problem can be solved by the conventional elimination or iterative techniques. But when  $z$  is large, of the order of 100 or over, the standard methods fail owing to storage limitations. However if  $A$  is banded (all the non-zero elements lie close to the main diagonal), other methods have been developed [49, 42] which require storage of only the elements of the band, making the solution of larger order equations possible. The speed of the solution in these methods also depends upon the bandwidth of the matrix: the smaller the bandwidth, the quicker the solution is found. In Livesley[38], the time taken to solve a set of simultaneous equations varies as the square of the bandwidth. Thus given  $A \underline{x} = \underline{b}$  to solve, where  $A$  is highly sparse, it is highly desirable to manipulate  $A$ , by pre- and post-multiplication of a suitable permutation matrix  $P$ , into a banded form and if possible into a form where the bandwidth is the minimum possible.

The problem of finding  $P$  has been split into two parts. The first, Stage 2, is concerned with obtaining a good approximation, i.e. a permutation which reduces the original bandwidth considerably. The second, consisting

of two further parts , named Stages 1 and 3 , finds a permutation which gives the minimum bandwidth . Stage 1 tries to evaluate the minimum bandwidth , failing this it gives a lower bound for it. This is important to Stage 3, which is an algorithm that finds a minimum bandwidth permutation. The more precise the value derived from Stage 1 , the quicker will a solution to Stage 3 be found.

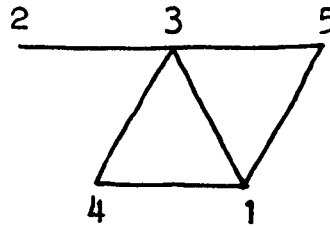
In this chapter,  $A$  will be regarded as a  $z \times z$  binary symmetric matrix , i.e. the non-zero elements will be replaced by ones .  $A$  is usually symmetric due to the nature of the models : actions and reactions are equal and opposite implying symmetry in the resulting derived equations. If  $\pi$  is the permutation  $\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 & \dots & z \\ p_1 & p_2 & p_3 & \dots & p_z \end{pmatrix}$  let us associate with it the  $z \times z$  permutation matrix  $Q$  where  $q_{ij} \in \mathbb{Q}$  , such that  $q_{ij} = 1$  , when  $j = p_i$  and  $q_{ij} = 0$  , otherwise.

Let us further shorten  $\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 & \dots & z \\ p_1 & p_2 & p_3 & \dots & p_z \end{pmatrix}$  to  $(p_1 \ p_2 \ p_3 \ \dots \ p_z)$  . Then the problem of finding a suitable permutation matrix  $Q$  , with which to pre- and post-multiply  $A$  in order to minimise the bandwidth , can be stated as that of finding the right sequence of integers  $(p_1 \ p_2 \ p_3 \ \dots \ p_z)$  of  $L(z)$ , the list of all permutations of  $(1 \ 2 \ 3 \ \dots \ z)$  . Denote the half bandwidth, or hbw , which occurs for a permutation  $\pi$  as  $b(\pi)$ .

## 4.2 Relationship between Matrices and Graphs.

Suppose we are given a binary , symmetric  $z \times z$  matrix,  $A$  . There will exist a corresponding undirected graph of  $z$  nodes , labelled from 1 to  $z$  , such that if  $a_{ij} = 1$  , where  $a_{ij} \in A$  , there is a line joining  $v_i$  to  $v_j$  (  $A$  will be the adjacency matrix representation of the resulting graph  $G_A$  ) .

$$\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$



matrix A      and its      graph  $G_A$

( fig. 4.21 )

It follows that the problem of minimising  $b(A)$  becomes the problem of re-labelling the nodes of  $G_A$ , such that the maximum difference between the labels of any two adjacent nodes is a minimum.

Define  $\text{dif}(i,j)$  as equal to  $|i - j|$ , if  $v_i$  is adjacent to  $v_j$ , and equal to zero otherwise. Let  $\text{ld}(G)$  stand for the maximum or largest difference between the present labels of adjacent points of  $G$ , i.e.

$$\text{ld}(G) = \text{Max} \{ \text{dif}(i,j) \} , \text{ over all } i \text{ and } j .$$

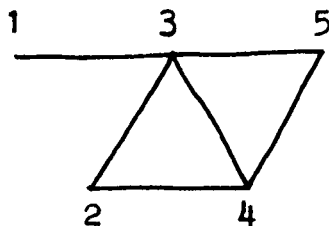
We are interested in the minimum value of  $\text{ld}(G)$ ,  $= \text{ld}_m(G')$  say, for some permutation  $G'$  of the labels of  $G$ .

Thus the problem is to find this quantity  $\text{ld}_m(G')$  and a labelling,  $G'$ , that leads to it. In fig. 4.21 we see that  $b(A) = 4$  and so is  $\text{ld}(G_A) = 4$ . By definition they will always be the same. Mathematically we define  $b(A)$  as equal

to  $\text{Min}_{\forall i} \left\{ \frac{l(i) - f(i) - 1}{2} \right\}$  where  $f(i)$  denotes the position of the first non-zero

term in the  $i^{\text{th}}$  row and  $l(i)$  the last. We shall use  $b$  when we wish to refer to matrices and  $\text{ld}$  to graphs. The matrix  $A$  can be rearranged by <sup>the</sup> pre- and post-multiplication of the permutation matrix corresponding to  $(4 \ 1 \ 3 \ 2 \ 5)$  as in fig. 4.22, to give  $\text{ld}(G_{A'}) = b(A') = 2$ .

$$\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$



matrix  $A'$

(fig. 4.22)

graph  $G_{A'}$

### 4.3 Tree-like Matrices.

The tree is a very special sort of graph and it seems highly unlikely that in an actual problem, the matrix will have representation of this type. However it was thought that if the problem of relabelling the tree was tackled and solved, this might lead to a method of solving the more highly complicated problem of relabelling the graph.

Two different approaches were tried and both were only partially successful, i.e. two algorithms were evolved which labelled trees such that the maximal difference between adjacent labels was minimal, but only if the number of points was less than 50 or so. The author feels that perseverance may have yielded something, but desisted from going on, as a lot of ideas had been thrown up which were of considerable use in the more general problem. For example it was noted that in handworked examples  $ld_m(T)$  was found to satisfy  $ld_m(T) = E(T)$ , where

$$E(T) = \text{Max}_{\text{Subtrees } T'} \left\{ \left\lfloor \frac{z' + m' - 2}{m'} \right\rfloor \right\} \text{-----} (4.3 A)$$

where for a particular subtree  $T'$  of  $T$ ,

$z'$  = number of points in  $T'$  and

$m' = \text{diam}(T')$ .

That is , given a matrix  $A$  having a tree-like correspondence  $T_A$  , there was always a labelling of  $T_A$  which satisfied ( 4.3 A ). That  $E(T_A)$  is a lower bound on  $ld_m(T_A)$  can be proven as follows :

THEOREM 4.3

$$ld_m(T_A) \geq E(T_A) .$$

Proof :- Let us denote  $ld_m(T_A)$  by  $ld_m$  . Consider any two points  $v_i, v_j$  in  $T'$  , one of the subtrees that yields the value  $E(T_A)$  . Let  $l(\mu[v_i, v_j]) = r$  , i.e. the path length between  $v_i$  and  $v_j$  is equal to  $r$  . If we try to label  $T'$  , we see that  $|lab(i) - lab(j)| \leq r \times ld_m$  . That is , if we have to label  $v_i$  and  $v_j$  , the label of  $v_j$  cannot have a difference from  $v_i$  greater than the number of lines between them times  $ld_m$  . If we assume, without loss of generality, that  $lab(i) > lab(j)$  then

$$lab(i) \leq lab(j) + r \times ld_m .$$

If we take the worst situation which can occur, i.e. lower bound on the right hand side and upper bound on the other we obtain

$$i.e. \quad ld_m \geq \frac{z' - 1}{r} .$$

As we are interested in obtaining the lowest bound on  $ld_m$ , this will occur when  $r$  has greatest value, i.e. when  $r = m' = \text{diam}(T')$  or the maxmin path length in  $T'$ ,

$$\text{thus } ld_m \geq \frac{z' - 1}{m'}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{But } ld_m \text{ is integral, } \therefore ld_m &\geq \left[ \frac{z' - 1}{m'} + \frac{m' - 1}{m'} \right] \\ &\geq \left[ \frac{z' + m' - 2}{m'} \right] \end{aligned}$$

Another way of putting the above formula is

$$ld_m \geq \text{the least integer} \geq \frac{z' - 1}{m'}. \quad .$$

#### 4.4 Stage 1.

The object of this subchapter and associated program was to compute a lower bound for  $b(A)$  and if possible, to obtain a value for  $b_m(A)$ . This will help us decide how long the program for Stage 3 should be run. In the previous subchapter, it was shown that  $E(T) \leq ld_m(T)$  and the author feels that the equality sign holds true. There is a similar and more general relationship, which includes that of Thm. 4.41, for graphs.

Consider a graph  $G$ , where  $G'$  indicates any connected partial graph of  $G$ . Let  $z'$  and  $m'$  denote, as before, the number of points and the maxmin path length in  $G'$ . Within  $G'$  there may be many pairs of points which lie on the ends of a maxmin path. There will be a pair  $v_i, v_j$  which have the least number of distinct maxmin paths between them (distinct maxmin paths have no point in common except for  $v_i$  and  $v_j$ ). Let the least number of distinct maxmin paths be  $k$ , we then have  $ld_m(G) \geq E(G)$ , where

$$E(G) = \min_{\forall G'} \left\{ \left\lceil \frac{z + m + k - 3}{m} \right\rceil \right\} \text{ ----- ( 4.4 A)}$$

#### Theorem 4.4

$$ld_m(G) \geq E(G) .$$

Proof :-

We label one end of the maxmin path as 1.

The other end will have a maximum value for its label. If there is only one maxmin path joining the two points, it will be  $1 + m' \times ld_m$ , where we have shortened  $ld_m(G)$  to  $ld_m$ . However if there are two distinct maxmin paths between these two end points, the upper bound on the label of one of them is now  $ld_m \times m'$ . For if we assign to one path the labels  $1, ld_m+1, 2 \times ld_m+1, 3 \times ld_m+1, \dots, m' \times ld_m+1$ , the other cannot have identical labels and hence its labeling must have a line with a difference greater than  $ld_m$ . Similarly, if there are  $k$  distinct paths between the two points, the maximum value of a label for one of them is

$$m' \times ld_m - (k - 2).$$

$$m' \times ld_m - (k-2) \geq z'$$

$$\text{i.e. } ld_m \geq \frac{z' + k - 2}{m'}$$

As in Thm. 4.3,  $ld_m$  is integral and we obtain

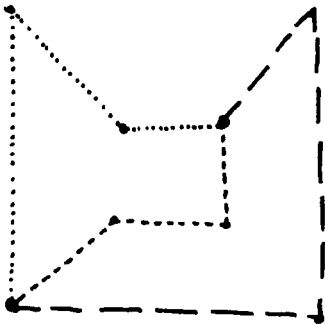
$$ld_m \geq \left\lceil \frac{z' + m' + k - 3}{m'} \right\rceil$$

$$\text{or } ld_m \geq \text{the least integer} \geq \frac{z' + k - 2}{m'}.$$

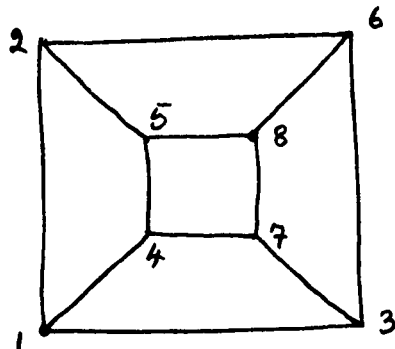
Q.E.D.

If we were willing to investigate all the partial graphs for a given graph, finding for each partial graph its maxmin path length, we would be able to evaluate  $E(G)$ . For small graphs it is a feasible proposition. However for large  $z$ , in the order of 30 and upwards, the method is too time consuming.

The author has met counter examples to the proposition that  $ld_m(G) = E(G)$ . But the expression does not seem to underestimate  $ld_m(G)$  either too much or too often. The author feels that some slight modification to ( 4.4 A ) will lead to the equality sign holding true. As a counter example to the equality sign holding true consider the simple cube as in fig. 4.41 . Considering the graph in toto we obtain  $E(G) = 3$  . (  $z = 8$  ,  $k = 3$  and  $m = 3$  ). Any partial graph will not yield a larger value for  $E(G)$  and yet  $ld_m(G) = 4$  ( this was found by appealing to symmetry and going through the reduced number of possible partial graphs).



( fig. 4.41 )



( fig. 4.42 )

#### 4.41 Mushrooming r-Trees with Maximum Height.

Given a connected graph , the mushrooming r-tree with maximum height will not be unique . This is easily seen because the r-tree which gives us the maximum height , will have as its highest point that point which itself must be the root of another mushrooming r-tree with exactly the same height.

Mushrooming r-trees,  $T_m$ , are built up in the following manner. Consider all points in  $G$  adjacent to  $v_r$  ( the designated root point ) . They will become adjacent points to  $v_r$  in  $T_m$  . Now consider each of these first generation points in turn and connect them to adjacent points within the graph , care being taken to exclude any connections which result in a circuit being formed in  $T_m$  . Having exhausted all connections to and from 2nd generation points the process is repeated on 3rd generation points. We notice a mushrooming-out effect from which the process derives its name. The process terminates when no new points can be added to the r-tree, i.e. the r-tree covers the graph. Hence all mushrooming r-trees are also spanning trees for that same graph.

The mushrooming r-tree is constructed for each point of  $G$  in turn and the one with maximum height gives us naturally , the mushrooming r-tree with maximum height . This then is a simple method for finding a maxmin path and its distance . We compute the mushrooming r-tree with maximum height which gives us a maxmin path ( the path between the highest point of the r-tree and the root ) and its length ( being the height of the r-tree ) .

#### 4.42 Evaluation of $E(G)$ .

Thus for a given partial graph we can compute the maxmin path distance. While we were computing this, we would also note the root point of that mushrooming r-tree which yields the maximum height. This root point will form one end point of the maxmin path. The other depends upon which of the highest points of the r-tree yields the least value of  $k$ , the number of distinct maxmin paths between the two end points of a maxmin path ( see Thm. 4.4 ).

We construct all possible connected partial graphs  $G'$  of  $G$  and their associated mushrooming r-trees of maximum height and compute  $E(G')$ . We note the best one, i.e. the largest  $E(G')$  and this gives us our value for  $E(G)$ .

For large problems it is both impracticable and impossible to carry out the above operations, due to the length of time spent analysing all possible partial graphs. However, if one could find this important partial graph  $G''$  which yields the largest value for  $E(G'')$ , then it would be a simple matter. The method described next cannot be proven to find this partial graph. However the author again feels that, if it does not sometimes find this important partial graph, it finds others which give a close value for  $E(G)$ .

#### 4.43 Finding the Important Partial Graph.

Within a graph define  $p(i,j)$  as

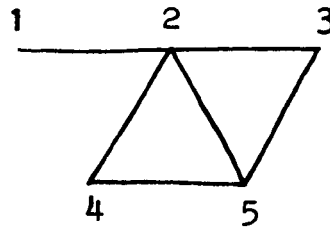
$$p(1,j) = d(j) ,$$

$$p(i,j) = \sum p(i-1,k) , \begin{cases} \text{for } i > 1 \text{ and the sum to be} \\ \text{taken over all } k \text{ where } v_k \text{ is} \\ \text{adjacent to } v_j . \end{cases}$$

Pictorially  $p(i,j)$  can be thought of as the number of different paths starting from any point in the graph , having length  $i$  and terminating at  $v_j$  . Thus as  $i$  increases, the values of  $p(i,j)$  for varying  $j$  give an indication of the relative density of the subgraph around any point  $j$  . Consider the binary matrix and its graph of fig. 4.21 and reproduced below :

$$\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

A



$G_A$

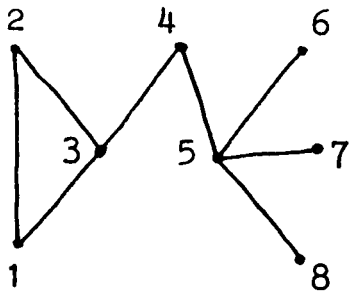
( fig. 4.431 )

If  $P = p(i,j)$  , where  $P$  is  $m \times z$  ( and for fig. 4.431 ,  $m = 2$  , the maxmin path length ) we obtain

$$P = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 4 & 2 & 2 & 3 \\ 4 & 8 & 7 & 7 & 8 \end{bmatrix}$$

Let us examine the  $m^{\text{th}}$  row of  $P$ . The values in this row indicate the number of paths of length  $m$  which terminate at each of the  $z$  points. Thus a point in the centre of a dense subgraph is going to have a higher value of  $p(m,j)$  than, say, one right on the end of a 'long thin arm'. Hence in the graph of fig. 4.431, we have  $p(2,2) \geq p(3,j)$  for all  $j$ . This bears out what we realize intuitively, that  $v_1$  is much further out and in the centre of a much less dense surrounding than  $v_2$ . We say that  $v_1$  is relatively less reachable than any other point and  $v_2$  is one of the most reachable points. It is easy to see that if  $P$  was extended by adding more rows then the  $r^{\text{th}}$  row ( $r > m$ ) would indicate roughly the same reachability for the points.

This then ranks the points of the graph in the order of relative reachability. It may be suggested that there is no need to laboriously compute all the elements of  $P$ , but to simply rank the points in order of their degrees i.e. by  $d(j)$ , and only compute  $p(2,j)$  or  $p(3,j)$  for those of equal degree. This ranking will lead to a different ordering of the points, as can be seen from the following example.



j	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
p(1,j)	2	2	3	2	4	1	1	1
p(2,j)	5	5	6	7	5	4	4	4
p(3,j)	11	11	17	11	19	5	5	5
p(m,j)	28	28	33	36	26	19	19	19

We see that  $v_4$  is of degree 2 and hence initially ranks lower than  $v_3$  and  $v_5$ , and yet  $p(4,4)$  has the greatest value of all  $p(4,j)$ .

The author decided that he would use the above concepts in tackling the problem of finding the important partial graph. The graph was reduced by one point at a time while computing  $E(G)$  for each successively smaller graph. ( $E(G)$  was computed for only the graph in question and not over all its partial graphs. From now on when we discuss the computation of  $E(G')$  for any graph  $G'$  we shall mean the evaluation of (4.4 A) over the graph  $G'$  and not over all its partial graphs.) The point to eliminate was the one with least reachability, i.e.  $v_j$  is eliminated if  $p(m, j) \leq p(m, i)$ , for all  $i$ . This gave excellent results as worked out on the computer. Unfortunately for larger values of  $z$  ( $z \geq 60$ ), the time taken to do this was still too long and hence the stage was rarely ever completed.

Having decided which point to eliminate ( subtract or delete ) from the graph , it was usually easy to accomplish the elimination , because the point was usually an end point. But there are examples where the point to be subtracted is a cut point, i.e. upon removing the point, the graph becomes disconnected . This then introduces difficulties of sequentially ordering the labels of points within the components and a little thought has to be put into the programming ( see Appendix 3.1 ) . In neither case will the time taken be affected as there are at most  $z - 2$  deletions to make.

#### 4.44 Analysis of Stage 1.

The conclusion is reached that this stage is not as necessary as was first thought. This is because the third Stage , for which this Stage was attempted , was found to be ineffective for large values of  $z$ . However it is worth running the program corresponding to this Stage in order to obtain an idea of the relative values of  $ld$  given by Stages 2 and 3 . For large values of  $z$  where Stage 3 makes no improvement , the results of this Stage are the only yard-stick whereby to judge the value of the labelling given by Stage 3.

#### 4.5 Stage 2.

This stage is concerned with the problem of finding a useful approximation to the minimal permutation. That is , to find a per~~mut~~<sup>g</sup>ation on th~~e~~<sup>g</sup> original graph which has a bandwidth which we hope is not far from the minimum. Here again the technique used was that of obtaining spanning trees , manipulating them into suitable configurations and then using the final configuration to give us a solution.

In Stage 1 we saw that  $E(G)$  is directly related to the maxmin path length. That is if one end of the maxmin path is labelled 1 , we hope to be able to label the graph minimally . Thus the first step to take is to find the end point of a maxmin path as explained in Chpt. 4.441 . We will show now how this helps us.

#### 4.51 Graphical Model.

Suppose we have a graph and let us imagine that we have a string model corresponding to the graph , where each piece of string , which joins any pairs of adjacent points , is of equal length . Further imagine a small weight to be attached to each point ( or knot ). If we now hold the string model up by one of its points , the rest will hang down and each point will lie in a well defined layer. The first or highest layer would consist of those adjacent to the point being held , the second layer would comprise of those points adjacent to the first layer and so on . Suppose we label the point being held as one . We now label the points in the second layer : two, three and so on, till all the second layer points have been labelled. We turn our attention to the next layer, the third, and continue the process on succeeding layers till all the points have been labelled . Thus all points in the preceding  $(r-1)$  layers will have been already labelled when we start labelling the points in the  $r^{\text{th}}$  layer. If we know the number of points in each layer, we can calculate the maximum possible value of  $ld(G)$  resulting from this method of labelling  $G$  . The worst possible difference will occur in the two adjacent layers which together have most points between them.

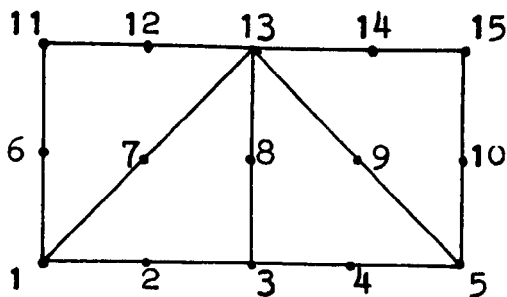
Let us define this quantity as  $ld_{max}(G)$  and it will be equal to  $Max \left\{ \sum_{1 \leq j \leq m} layer[j] + \sum_{1 \leq j \leq m} layer[j+1] - 1 \right\}$  ,

where  $layer[j]$  = value of the layer within which  $v_j$  lies  
and  $layer[v_r] = 0$  , where  $v_r$  is the  
label of the point being held,

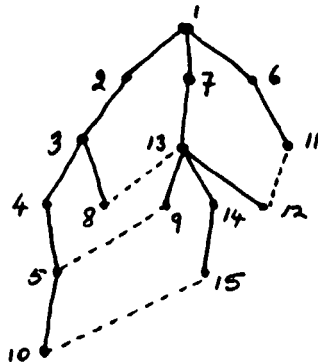
$$\text{and } \sum_{l=1}^2 layer[j] = \sum_{l=1}^2 \delta_{j, layer[l]}$$

where  $\delta_{s,t}$  is defined as the Kroenecker delta.

$\sum layer[j]$  , in other words , is equal to the number of points in  $layer[j]$  . This can be best illustrated by a simple example , as in fig. 4.511 .



( fig. 4.511 )

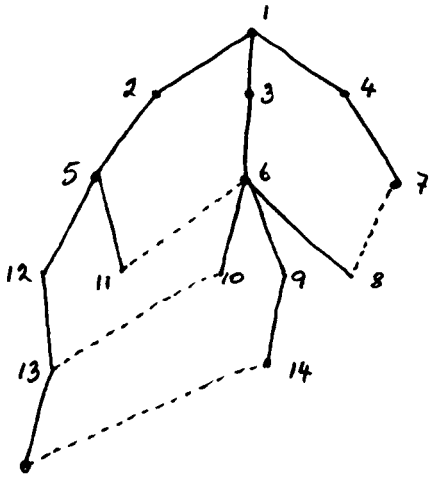


( fig. 4.512 )

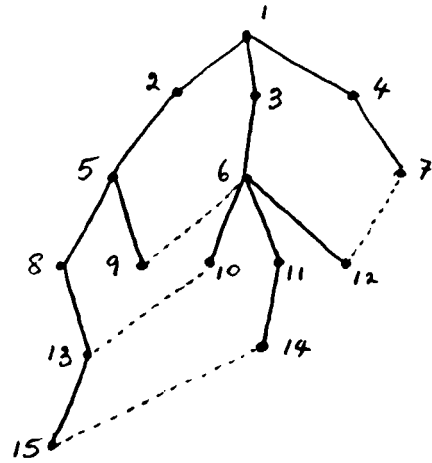
1	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15
layer[1]	1	2	3	4	5	2	2	4	4	6	3	4	3	4	5

( tables 4.513 )

1	1	2	3	4	5	6
sumlayer[1]	1	3	3	5	2	1



( fig. 4.514 )



( fig. 4.515 )

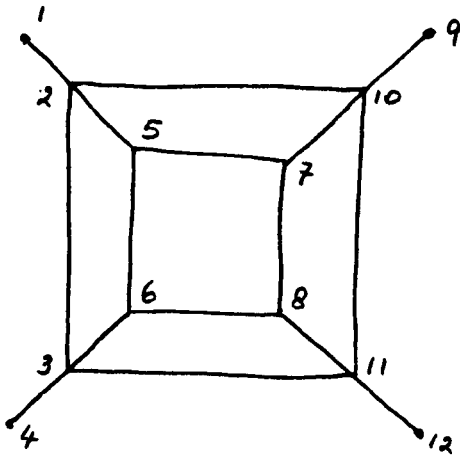
In the example of fig. 4.511 we have a simple metal girder  $G$  already labelled ( and thus having  $ld(G) = 6$  ). If we now hang the corresponding string model at  $v_1$  we obtain the figure of 4.512. We have  $ld_{max}(G) = 7$ , after examining the sunlayer table of tables 4.513. We can also build a mushrooming r-tree from  $v_1$  and this is indicated in the same figure ( fig. 4.512 ) by heavy lines , its cotree being indicated by dotted lines . We can relabel fig. 4.512 , as indicated a paragraph or two ago and in the worst case obtain the labelling as in fig. 4.514 . This has  $ld(G') = 7$  . But with a little thought we can immediately reduce this to  $ld(G') = 5$  , as given by the labelling in fig. 4.515 .

Hence if we can , firstly, choose the right point from which to hang the model and secondly , manipulate points from one layer to another ( i.e. by altering the layer value attached to the points ) such that we decrease the numbers within those layers with most points, we have an excellent chance of obtaining a labelling with a smaller  $ld$ . Lastly, having got our model in a sausage shaped formation, as opposed to the original multi-triangular configuration, we must try to find a method of labelling which produces the lowest value of  $ld(G)$  possible.

#### 4.51.1 Manipulation of the Graph.

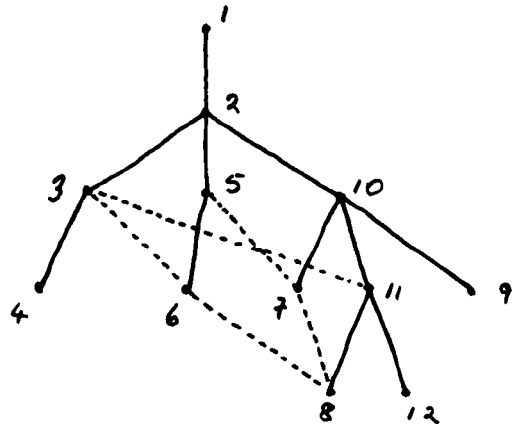
The hanging model and a r-tree have at least one property in common. Adjacent points differ by at most either one generation or one layer. Let us within the graph, construct a mushrooming r-tree whose root is the point being held. Then the generation number of a point will give an exact indication of the layer within which it lies. Initially  $\text{layer}[i]$  would be set equal to  $\text{gen}[i]$ . The problem is that of altering the value of  $\text{layer}[i]$  for some  $v_i$  such that we achieve a smooth, sausage-like hanging graph, i.e. minimise  $\text{ld}_{\text{max}}(G)$ . Given that the resulting method is heuristic, it would be to our interest if the mushrooming r-tree was one with maximum height. For the more layers possible the better the chance of decreasing  $\text{ld}_{\text{max}}(G)$ . Returning to the sausage analogy, for a given amount of stuffing the sausage is likely to be much thinner if we have a longer skin. Conversely, if the length of skin is decreased the sausage is bound to get thicker. Hence it is desirable that the point being held should be the end point of a maxmin path. That is, the mushrooming r-tree should be one of maximum height.

The general outline of the program is as follows. A search is made along  $\text{sumlayer}[i]$  for  $1 \leq i \leq m$ , looking for that layer with most points or two adjacent layers which together have most points. The points of the layer with most points, are examined to see if there is one which can be moved up a layer (i.e.  $\text{layer}[j] := \text{layer}[j] - 1$ ;) and yet not create a situation where two adjacent points ( of  $G$  ) have more than one layer between them. Thus if the point to be moved up one layer has adjacent points in the layer below, these also have to be moved up one layer and so on. As an example consider the following graph in fig. 4.51.11.



graph  $G$

(fig. 4.51.11)



r-tree  $T_m$

( fig. 4.51.12 )

The graph  $G$  of fig. 4.51.11 represents a simple structure in civil engineering . The shape of the structure is a box or cube sitting on four legs . We find from  $G$  that the maxmin path length is 4 and that one of the maxmin paths is given by  $[v_1, v_2, v_{10}, v_{11}, v_{12}]$  . We can construct a mushrooming  $r$ -tree  $T_m$  with  $v_1$  as root and obtain the  $r$ -tree in fig. 4.51.12. The dotted lines indicate the members of the cotree. The sumlayer table for  $T_m$  can be constructed and it is as follows (in table 4.51.13):

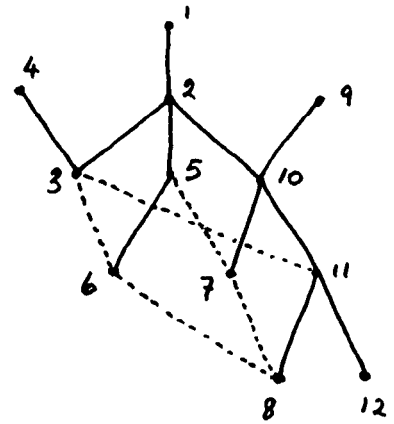
1	1	2	3	4	5
sumlayer[1]	1	1	3	5	2

(table 4.51.13)

We see that  $\text{sumlayer}[4]$  and  $\text{sumlayer}[3]$  together have maximum value. We concentrate on  $\text{sumlayer}[4]$  as that is the larger . We note that both  $v_4$  and  $v_9$  could have their layer numbers decreased without any complications . If we allow a step at a time to the reduction of a points layer value it will take 4 steps to reduce the layer values of  $v_4$  and  $v_9$  each from 4 to 3 , e.g. %

1	1	2	3	4	5
sumlayer[1]	1	1	3	<u>5</u>	2
	1	1	<u>4</u>	4	2
	1	2	3	<u>4</u>	2
	1	2	<u>4</u>	3	2
	1	3	3	3	2

(table 4.51.14)



( fig. 4.51.15 )

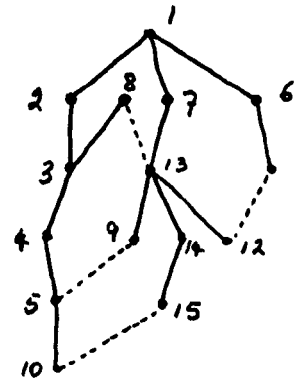
In each case the layer chosen to be reduced is underlined in table 4.51.14 . The last sumlayer values in the table corresponds to the configuration in fig. 4.51.15. The r-tree is still discernable except that its lines do not 'hang down' as in the previous examples but lie at their various levels.

In the last example there was no trouble as to the choice of which point to move up . However it is not always as simple as that in general. The point to be chosen is that one with least degree. This covers the previous example as  $v_4$  and  $v_9$  were both of degree 1 . Thus a search is

made through the points of the particular (maximum) sum-layer and the one with least degree ( with respect to the graph ) is chosen to move up . If there is more than one point of least degree an arbitrary choice is made between them : in the actual program it was the one which had the least original label. Again in the example of fig.4.51.12 it would have been  $v_4$  rather than  $v_9$  . For completeness sake the result of this method on the r-tree of fig. 4.51/2 is shown in fig. 4.51.17 with the accompanying table ( 4.51.16 ) showing the variation in its sunlayers.

1	1	2	3	4	5	6
sumlayer[1]	1	3	3	<u>5</u>	2	1
	1	3	<u>4</u>	4	2	1
	1	4	3	4	2	1

(table 4.51.16)

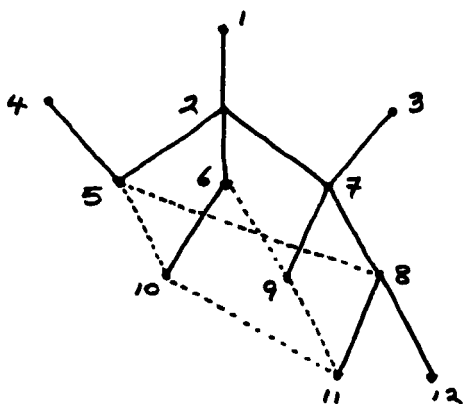


(fig. 4.51.17)

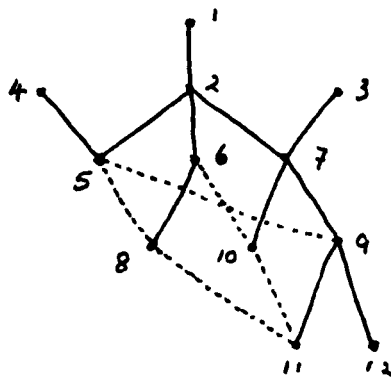
We note that as we start with all the points hanging down (i.e. the values of `layer[i]` are the maximum possible for all `i`), they have initially only one degree of movement . That is they can only move upwards , i.e. take lower values of `layer[i]` . Once some points have had their layer values altered , there will be for some points the choice of either having their layer values further decreased or increased again. This problem is side-stepped in this program by allowing the points to have only one degree of freedom all the time, i.e. they can only move upwards or stay where they are but never move down. Thus there comes a time when any movement of the points (by the alteration of their layer values) either increases the maximum `sumlayer` value or increases the maximum `sum` of any two adjacent `sumlayers`. At this instant the program (or method) stops. More sophisticated methods could be devised which allowed movement in either direction. This introduces added difficulties such as which point to choose and in which direction is it to move or when is the method to terminate.

#### 4.51.2 Labelling of the Graph.

The author found this the most difficult task of all, and feels that the method finally adopted in this subchapter ( and program ) is only just adequate. The problem was to find a method of labelling the modified  $\tau_m$ , the mushrooming r-tree of the previous subchapter. As hinted earlier , the method is to label the points in successive and increasing valued layers. Thus all the points in layer [1] are first labelled, starting from one. Then all the points in layer [2] are labelled and so on until all layers contain labelled points. In the example of the previous sub-chapter ( i.e. fig. 4.51.15. ) it might lead to an initial solution as shown in fig. 4.51.21. with  $ld(G^t) = 5$ .

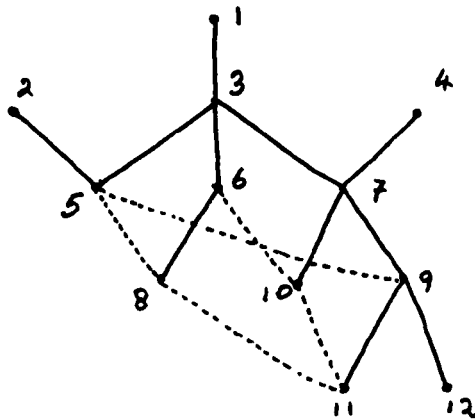


( fig. 4.51.21 )



( fig. 4.51.22 )

An improvement, perhaps an obvious one, would be to label first, within a layer, those that are adjacent to an earlier labelled point in the layer above them. Thus the figure under consideration will be labelled as indicated in fig. 4.51.22. This does not decrease  $ld(G)$  in this particular case. But it can be seen that instead of lines that contributed to  $ld(G)$  equaling 5 we have now only one: (2-7). This can be eliminated if we introduce the idea of 'slack', whereby, if there is any slack between layers ( e.g. between the first layer,  $v_1$ , and the next to be labelled in layer [2] ) while labelling, other points obtain precedence. This is illustrated in fig. 4.51.23.



( fig. 4.51.23 )

A further few crude rules are found in the description of the program in Appendix 3.2.

4.52 Analysis of Stage 2.

This was found to be quite a fast method of obtaining a permutation or labelling of the graph whose ld was considerably reduced . In the random data examples reductions in the order of a third or higher were obtained. There is lots of scope for improvement either in the manipulation or the labelling of the graph . There is no need to alter the basic idea but merely refine the rules ( of manipulation and/or of the labelling ).

## 4.6 Stage 3.

### 4.61 Introduction.

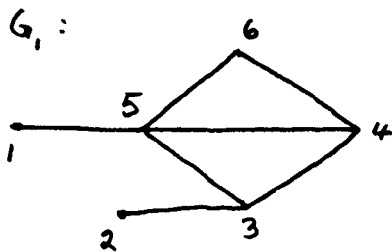
This the final Stage, improves upon the solution obtained by Stage 2 and if neccessary finds a permutation with minimum bandwidth . The algorithm was the indirect result of a talk given by G.Alway some two and a half years ago . It is similar in principle to the one published by Alway and Martin [ 34 ] but the method of attack and explanation is quite different . Alway and Martin discuss their algorithm in terms of binary words and patterns. Here the emphasis is on the corresponding graph and the changes in its ld due to various labellings on it. Suppose as before, that the list of permutations be referred to as  $L(z)$  and that within this list the permutations are ordered lexicographically in increasing order of magnitude, e.g.  $L(3)=(1,2,3);(1,3,2);(2,1,3);(2,3,1);(3,1,2);(3,2,1)$ .

Consider one of the permutations of  $L(z)$  and let its members be held in  $K[i]$ , an Algol array. If we allow the identity permutation to correspond to the original labelling of the graph, then the labelling of the graph corresponding to the permutation  $K[i]$  is as follows :

$v_{K[i]} = v'_i$  , i.e. the point originally labelled  $K[i]$  is to be relabelled  $i$  . If we write out the adjacency matrix cor-

responding to the identity permutation, then the matrix corresponding to the permutation  $K[1]$  is obtained by replacing the  $i^{\text{th}}$  row and columns by the  $K[i]^{\text{th}}$  ones.

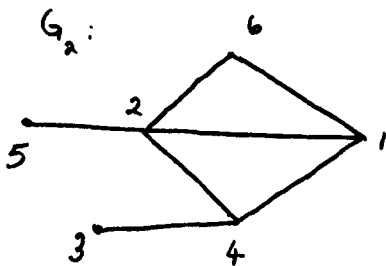
For example consider the graph  $G_1$  in fig. 4.611. Let this correspond to the identity permutation and have binary matrix representation as in  $A_{G_1}$ . The graph  $G_2$  and its matrix  $A_{G_2}$  corresponding to the permutation  $(4, 5, 2, 3, 1, 6)$  can be pictured as in fig. 4.612.



(fig. 4.611)

$A_{G_1} =$

1	2	3	4	5	6
0	0	0	0	1	0
0	0	1	0	0	0
0	1	0	1	1	0
0	0	1	0	1	1
1	0	1	1	0	1
0	0	0	1	1	0



(fig. 4.612)

$A_{G_2} =$

4	5	2	3	1	6
0	1	0	1	0	1
1	0	0	1	1	1
0	0	0	1	0	0
1	1	1	0	0	0
0	1	0	0	0	0
1	1	0	0	0	0

We see that  $K[1] = 4, 5, 2, 3, 1, 6$  for  $i = 1, 2, \dots, 6$ . The correspondence between the two labelled graphs is that within  $G$ ,

$v_4$	has been relabelled	1	, i.e.	$v_4 = v'_1$	,
$v_5$		2	, i.e.	$v_5 = v'_2$	,
.	.	.	.	.	.
$v_6$		6	, i.e.	$v_6 = v'_6$	.

Thus if we go through  $L(z)$  and calculate the  $ld$  for each permutation, we shall be able to find a permutation with  $ld_m$ . Another way of doing this is to note the  $ld$  of the identity permutation and then search through  $L(z)$  noting only those permutations which yield successively smaller values of  $ld$ . The last one noted will be the one corresponding to  $ld_m(G)$ . This is in fact what the algorithm does. It surveys the  $z!$  possible permutations using stringent conditions to reject unsuitable permutations such that a comprehensive scan can be made in a much shorter time.

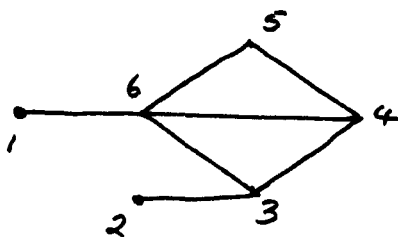
As it is impossible to carry within the computer all  $L(z)$  permutations, we have to generate within  $K[1]$  each permutation that we wish to examine. It is during this generating process that we incorporate the rules of rejection in order to build up our complete permutation.

#### 4.62 Generating the $K[i]$ (or Rules of Choice).

The method of choosing permutations from  $L(z)$  is to fill in, without repetition, the values of  $K[i]$  from the set,  $L$ , of numbers (or labels)  $\{1, 2, 3, \dots, z\}$ . The filling in of the array  $K[i]$  corresponds to the relabelling of the graph. Thus if we allocate a number to  $K[1]$  and then another to  $K[2]$  and so on, this will correspond to the label 1 being attached to the point originally labelled  $K[1]$ , label 2 being attached to the point originally labelled  $K[2]$  and so on. The labels to be applied, rather than the points to be labelled, are chosen in natural order.

We must evolve some rules for choosing the numbers  $K[1], K[2], \dots, K[z]$  such that these rules correspond to the sequential examination of  $L(z)$ . Let us associate with each label  $i$  the set of unlabelled points  $U(i)$ . The rule will be that we allocate to  $K[i]$ , for increasing  $i$ , the least member of  $U(i)$ . Consider the graph of fig. 4.611. We have  $U(1) = \{1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6\}$  and hence  $K[1] := 1$ . We have a dynamic pointer that now moves to  $K[2]$  indicating that this is the next location to be filled. We have  $U(2) = \{2, 3, 4, 5, 6\}$  and so  $K[2] := 2$ . When the pointer finally moves to  $K[6]$  we obtain within  $K[i]$  the identity permutation, the first in  $L(z)$ .

Let us consider the next permutation which we know to be ( 1, 2, 3, 4, 6, 5 ). The pointer is at K[6]. We reject the content of K[6] and see if there is another member within U(6) to choose. There is not and so we move the pointer down (or leftwards) to K[5] .  $U(5) = \{5, 6\}$  . We now alter the content of K[5] by choosing the least member within U(5) greater than (the old) K[5] . This is the previous mentioned rule but with greater restriction. Thus  $K[5] := 6$  . The pointer moves up to K[6] and we use the first mentioned rule to obtain  $K[6] := 5$  . The graph and matrix corresponding to this permutation are shown in fig. 4.621 .

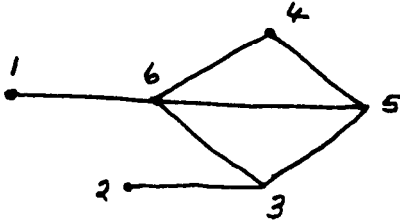


(fig. 4.621)

<u>1</u>	<u>2</u>	<u>3</u>	<u>4</u>	<u>6</u>	<u>5</u>
0	0	0	0	0	1
0	0	1	0	0	0
0	1	0	1	0	1
0	0	1	0	1	1
0	0	0	1	0	1
1	0	1	1	1	0

It is worth emphasising the situation when either rule is to be used. Let us refer to the first rule mentioned, that of choosing the least member of  $U(1)$  , as Rule ( of Choice ) 1 and the second, that of choosing the least member of  $U(1)$  greater than the previous  $K[1]$ , as Rule ( of Choice ) 2 . If it is required to fill in  $K[j]$  then Rule 1 is used if the pointer has just moved up from  $K[j-1]$  to  $K[j]$  , and Rule 2 if the pointer has just moved down from  $K[j+1]$  to  $K[j]$  .

Consider the next permutation in the above mentioned example. We know that this will be  $(1,2,3,5,4,6)$  but let us see how it is obtained . The pointer is at  $K[6]$  and moves down to  $K[5]$ . We see that Rule 2 indicates that no member of  $U(5)$  can be allocated to  $K[5]$ . So the pointer moves down to  $K[4]$  . We note that  $U(4) = \{4, 5, 6\}$  . Rule 2 gives us the point 5 to be allocated to  $K[4]$ . ( This means that the point 5 has been allocated the label 4. ) The pointer moves now up to  $K[5]$  and we use Rule 1 to fill in  $K[5]$ . We have  $U(5) = \{4, 6\}$  and thus  $K[5] := 4$  . Finally the pointer moves up to  $K[6]$  and  $K[6] := 6$  . The corresponding graph and matrix are shown in fig. 4.622 .



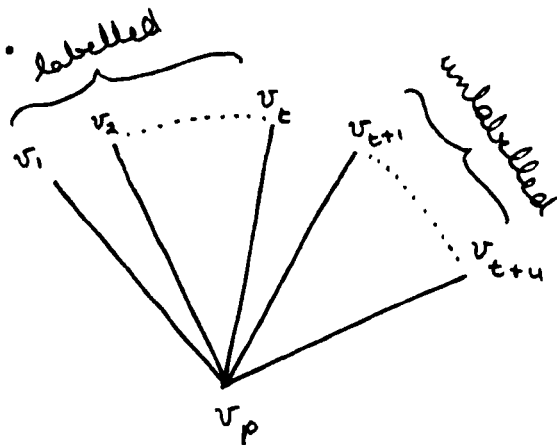
(fig. 4.622)

1	2	3	5	4	6
0	0	0	0	0	1
0	0	1	0	0	0
0	1	0	0	1	1
0	0	0	0	1	1
0	0	1	1	0	1
1	0	1	1	1	0

Thus given a permutation , whether partial or complete, we can by the use of the above mentioned rules find the next complete permutation in  $L(z)$  . We could use this to search the list  $L(z)$  examining each permutation  $\pi_i$  in turn in order to evaluate  $b(\pi_i)$  and hence obtain  $b_m(\pi_i)$ . However this is impracticable for  $z$  greater than seven or eight. Thus we introduce some further tests in order to reject intermediate permutations in which we are not interested because their ld is necessarily greater than the value we are looking for. These tests will be called Tests for Rejection.

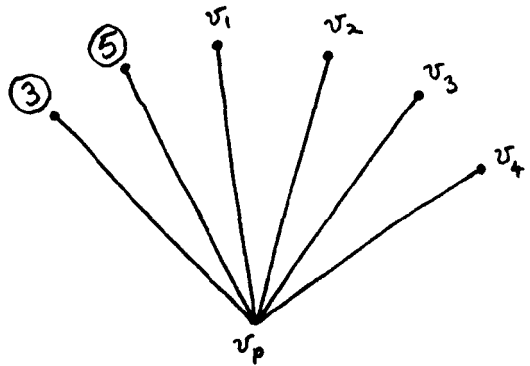
#### 4.63 Tests for Rejection.

The Tests ( for Rejection ) can be best explained in terms of the labelling of the graph . Suppose we have a typical unlabelled point  $v_p$  which is attached to  $t$  labelled points  $v_1, v_2, \dots, v_t$  and  $u$  unlabelled points  $v_{t+1}, \dots, v_{t+u}$  as in fig. 4.631.



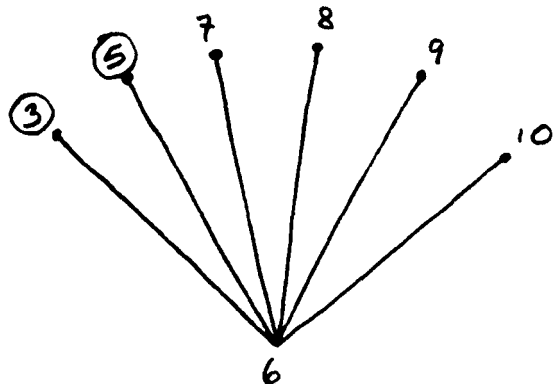
(fig. 4.631)

Further suppose that we wish to consider assigning the next unused label  $l$  to  $v_p$  and that  $\text{dif}(v_p', v_i) = r$  ( for  $i = 1, \dots, t$  ) : that is, if we assign the label  $l$  to  $v_p$ , the maximum difference between it and any of the previously labelled points is  $r$ . We can state that for any subsequent labelling of the points adjacent to  $v_p$ ,  $\text{dif}(v_p', v_i) \geq \max\{u, r\}$ , for  $i = 1, \dots, t, t+1, \dots, t+u$ . In other words, if we assign the label  $l$  to  $v_p$  and whatever the subsequent labelling to the unlabelled points of the graph, we cannot hope to obtain an ld for the graph of less than  $\max\{u, r\}$ .



(fig. 4.632)

For example consider the configuration of fig. 4.632 with two points already labelled 3 and 5. Suppose that the next label to be assigned is 6. This corresponds to filling in  $K[6]$ . The test is: can 6 be assigned to  $v_p$  such that the final labelling has an ld less than or equal to, 3 say. The answer is no!  $\text{dif}(v_p, v_i) = \text{dif}(v_p, v_i) \geq 4$  ( for  $i = 1, 2, 3, 4$  ), thus the least ld we can expect if we allocate 6 to  $v_p$  is 4 as shown in fig. 4.633.



(fig. 4.633)

The correspondence with the array  $K[i]$  is this.  $U(6)$  contains among its members  $\{v_1, v_2, v_3, v_4, v_5\}$ . A member of  $U(6)$  has to be chosen for allocation to  $K[6]$ . We have just shown that if we were only interested in permutations whose ld is equal to or less than 3, we would not consider the point  $v_5$  since it has four adjacent points as yet unlabelled. This is our Test for Rejection 1.

The mechanism for carrying this out is as follows. For each label  $i$ , we have already associated with it the set of unlabelled points  $U(i)$ . We now define a subset  $N(i)$  ( the set of Needed or Neighbours ) of  $U(i)$ .  $N(i)$  contains all the members of  $U(i)$  which are adjacent to  $K[1]$ ,  $K[2]$ , ... ,  $K[i-1]$  and do not appear in  $K[1], K[2], \dots, K[i-1]$ .  $N(i)$  can thus be defined in terms of  $N(i-1), K[i-1]$  and  $U(i-1)$ . We can define  $N(i)$  symbolically as  $N(1) = \emptyset$  and 
$$N(i) = \{N(i-1) - K[i-1]\} \cup \left\{ \text{all points adjacent to } v_{K[i-1]} \right\} \cap U(i-1),$$
 for  $i > 1$ .

$N(i)$  can be thought of as a priority subset within  $U(i)$  from which the choice for  $K[i]$  is sometimes preferentially made.

Suppose we are searching for a labelling whose ld is less than  $LD$  and that the situation arises where the number of members in  $N(j) = LD + 1$ . This means that in the graph we have  $(LD + 1)$  unlabelled points ad-

ja cent to already labelled points. Even if we allocate the next  $(LD + 1)$  labels to these points in  $N(j)$  we would have a labelling whose ld is greater than  $LD$ . Thus Test (for Rejection) 1 corresponds to finding that the number of members in  $N(j)$  is greater than  $LD$ . This means that the choice of the point in  $K[j-1]$  is inadequate and that any permutation which has its first  $(j-1)$  elements the same as  $K[i]$  (for  $i = 1$  to  $j-1$ ), can be safely neglected. The result is that we skip down  $L(z)$  to the first permutation whose  $(j-1)$  element is different from that in  $K[j-1]$ .

It is possible while filling in  $K[i]$  to obtain a partial permutation such that within the graph two adjacent labelled points  $v_u, v_\ell$  say, have  $\text{diff}(v'_u, v'_\ell) > LD$ . The correspondence in the array  $K[i]$  is that there are more than  $LD$  other points between the positions occupied by  $v_u$  and  $v_\ell$ . That is if  $K[s] = i$  and  $K[t] = l$ , then  $|t-s| > LD$ . Thus every time  $K[j]$  is filled, a backcheck is made to see if any labelled points adjacent to  $v_{u[j]}$  appear in positions greater than  $LD$  places away. This is Test (for Rejection) 2. We reject the current choice of  $K[j]$  if the backcheck is positive.

#### 4.64 Summary of Rules and Tests.

As a result of the introduction of the set  $N(1)$ , we can make one more point about Rule (of Choice) 2. We mentioned that the choice is to be the least member of  $U(j)$  greater than the present member of  $K[j]$ . Suppose  $N(j)$  contains LD members then the choice of members for  $K[j]$  is in fact going to be much more restricted. We cannot afford to choose any member other than from  $N(j)$ . If we did not,  $N(j+1)$  would contain all the members of  $N(j)$  plus the points adjacent to the new  $K[j]$ . This would result in Test 2 rejecting the choice in the next iteration. Hence we anticipate this by stipulating that if  $N(1)$  is full ,i.e. contains LD members, the choice will be from  $N(1)$  and not  $U(1)$ .

#### Rules (of Choice) for $K[j]$ .

- 1/. The pointer has just moved up from  $K[j-1]$  to  $K[j]$ . The choice for  $K[j]$  will be the least member of  $U(j)$  (or  $N(j)$ ).
- 2/. The pointer has just moved down from  $K[j+1]$  to  $K[j]$ . The choice will be the least member of  $U(j)$  ( or  $N(j)$  ) greater than the old value of  $K[j]$ .

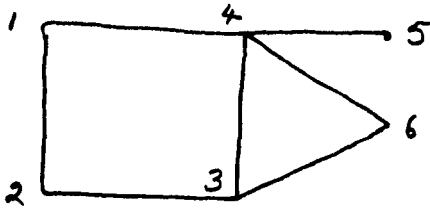
#### Tests (for Rejection) of $K[j]$ .

- 1/. The number of members in  $N(j)$  is greater than LD .
- 2/. There are two adjacent points of the graph whose positions in the permutation are more than LD places apart.

#### 4.65 The Algorithm.

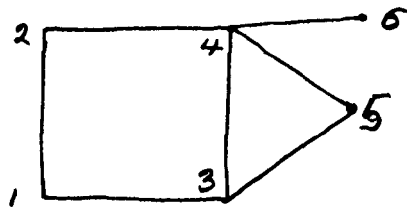
The algorithm works in two parts. It alternates between choosing an element from  $U(1)$  to be associated with label 1, and that of testing whether it falls foul of one of the Tests. Once we have filled in all the values of  $K[i]$  we have a permutation,  $ld$ , which is equal to or less than  $LD$ . We put  $LD := ld - 1$  and continue the process from this last permutation. Eventually we either allow the algorithm to test  $L(z)$  completely (and thus be sure of obtaining  $ld_m$ ) or prematurely terminate the process. The actual program has been adapted so that, if it is required,  $LD$  can be input by the User. Thus if we have other evidence that  $ld_m$  is going to be somewhere near the value  $LD$ , we insert this value into  $LD$  and the skips down the list will be consequently greater. As an example of the method consider the graph of fig. 4.651. Suppose we wish to find a permutation yielding an  $ld$  of 2. We put  $LD = 2$  and the various stages of the state of  $K[i]$  are shown in table 4.653.

The table is almost self-explanatory. As it is read from left to right and down the page so does the algorithm work. The  $U(j)$  column is only filled in when reference is made to it. Within the computer  $U(j)$  is continually updated. Test 2 is made after  $K[j]$  is filled in and hence appears to the right of the  $K[i]$ . The labelling corresponding to the final labelling is shown in fig. 4.652.



( 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6 )

(fig. 4.651)



( 2, 1, 3, 4, 6, 5 )

(fig. 4.652)

j	N(j)	U(j)	Rule or Test	K[1]						Test 2.
				1	2	3	4	5	6	
1	0	1,2,3,4,5,6	RC 1	<u>1</u>						TR 2
2	2,4		RC 1	1	<u>2</u>					
3	3,4		RC 1	1	2	<u>3</u>				
4	4,6		RC 1	1	2	3	<u>4</u>			
3	3,4		RC 2	1	2	<u>4</u>				
4	3,5,6		TR 1							
3	3,4		RC 2	1	2	*				
2	2,4		RC 2	1	<u>4</u>					
3	2,3,5,6		TR 1							
2	2,4		RC 2	1	*					
1	0	1,2,3,4,5,6	RC 2	<u>2</u>						TR 2
2	1,3		RC 1	2	<u>1</u>					
3	3,4		RC 1	2	1	<u>3</u>				
4	4,6		RC 1	2	1	3	<u>4</u>			
5	5,6		RC 1	2	1	3	4	<u>5</u>		
6	6		RC 1	2	1	3	4	5	<u>6</u>	
5	5,6		RC 2	2	1	3	4	<u>6</u>		
6	5		RC 1	2	1	3	4	6	<u>5</u>	

\* None

( table 4.653 )

#### 4.66 Analysis of Stage 3.

The program, Stage 3, is based on the algorithm just described and was reasonably fast on small sets of data, i.e.  $z < 30$ , but not as fast as was hoped for larger values of  $z$ . This conclusion is reached on the basis that for  $z \leq 90$ , Stage 3 was used in conjunction with Stage 2 and rarely improved its result. When, due to the time it was taking, Stage 3 was prematurely terminated, the partial permutation in  $K[i]$  was printed out and this indicated that the algorithm was not skipping down the list  $L(z)$  very quickly (see Chpt. 4.67). However no comparison, bad or otherwise, can be made with that as published by Alway and Martin as they do not include any experimental results. The method can be improved if we were to make the jumps or skips down the list greater. This can be achieved by refining either the Rules of Choice and/or Tests for Rejection. That is define further rules and tests which would either choose more appropriate points to insert in  $K[j]$  or reject the choice for  $K[j]$  on the grounds that it would not lead to a desirable permutation.

The Tests as described in 4.63 were in terms of the immediate neighbours (or adjacent points) to a point. That is, if we gave a point  $v_i$  the label  $l$  we were only con-

cerned with the effect on  $N(1)$ , the subset of points immediately adjacent to previously labelled points . We could extend the tests so as to cover unlabelled points two, three or four lines away . But this means that the time spent in testing for the suitability of a point is going to increase. There will be a point whereby the increase in the size of the skips down  $L(z)$  is going to be nullified by the time spent choosing and rejecting unsuitable permutations.

#### 4.7 Conclusion.

The three stages, as programmed for the KDF9 in Algol, were tried on two sets of data. One set was randomly produced and the other was gathered from various sources. When possible, Stage 3 alone was attempted on the same data and the accompanying table ( table 4.71 ) gives an idea of the result of Stages 1, 2, and 3, and Stage 3 alone and their respective times. On the random data,  $z > 40$ , it was not possible to run all the three stages to their conclusion, and thus the times in their column indicate how long they ran before they were terminated.

We see that, for the practical examples illustrated in figs. 4.72 and 4.73 , as opposed to the random ones, all three stages give close results. That is Stage 1 either gave  $ld$  or just one less, and Stage 2 gave the minimum  $ld$  or one above. However the random examples did not fare so well. Stage 3, except for the first one, did not improve upon the permutation as supplied by Stage 2. This can be accounted for slightly by the fact that rarely was Stage 3 ever allowed to run to its natural end. Stage 2 was usually allowed to finish, and it reduced the initial  $ld$  value ( as set up by the random matrix generator ) by at least a third. How much it would improve upon

an intelligent guess or attempt<sup>p</sup> at an initial labelling is debat<sup>e</sup>able. The resulting graphs produced by the random matrix generat<sup>e</sup>or were so complex and naturally non-planar ( i.e. they could not be drawn on a two-dimensional plane without lines intersecting each other ) that it would be impossible to envisage the graphs, let alone attempt to label them. In the cases where the graphs were gathered from various sources (usually civil and electrical engineering problems and chemical structures) the improvement may not be so significant, but this is because with practice the author acquired certain intuitive and non-rigorous rules for the labelling of graphs. The practical problem as illustrated in figs. 4.72 and 4.73 have the least 1d labelling on the graphs.

# Random Data Table.

Title	% density	z br		Initial value of $ld(G)$	Value of $E(G) + ld(G)$ in all three stages Times for each stage in minutes/seconds.			
					1	2	3	3 only
Random	25	20	46	18	6 50s.	11 36s.	10 30/42	
"	20	40	151	37	13 10/59	25 30/20	NONE 10/45	33 95/20
"	10	60	157	56	14 18/8	32 9/36	NONE 21/33	55 20/27
"	5	60	110	51	11 3/45	26 4/7	NONE 4/46	51 10/15
"	5	70	122	64	12 5/34	26 6/44	NONE 5/23	64 15/8
"	5	80	153	78	13 5/17	35 8/10	NONE 5/22	78 20/3
"	5	90	195	79	15 5/9	42 7/34	*	*
"	10	90	369	87	23 11/19	61 25/33	*	*
"	5	120	324	110	*	72 25/27	*	*
"	3	150	304	142	*	61 31/3	*	*
"	3	200	540	192	*	126 42/49	*	*

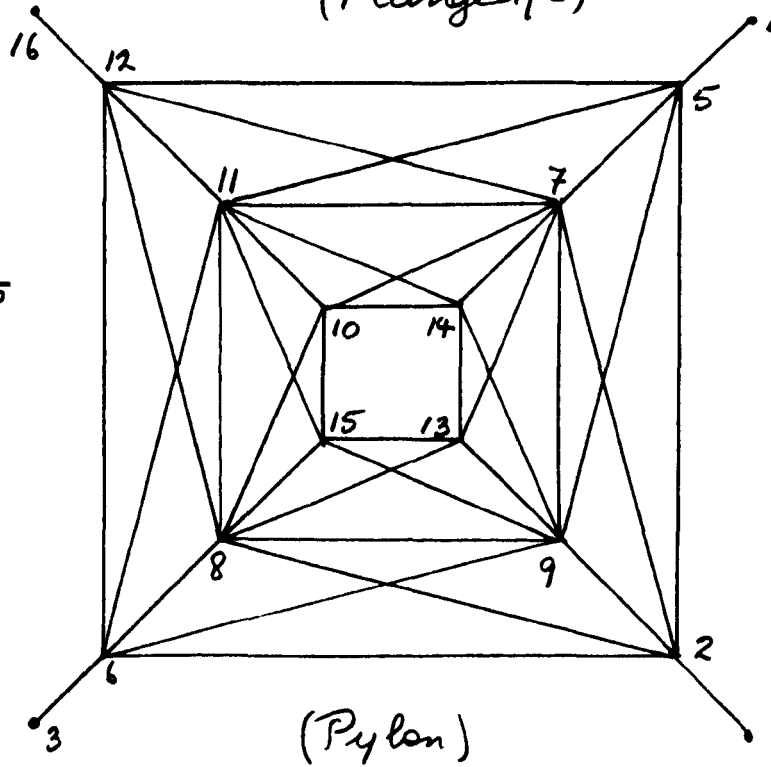
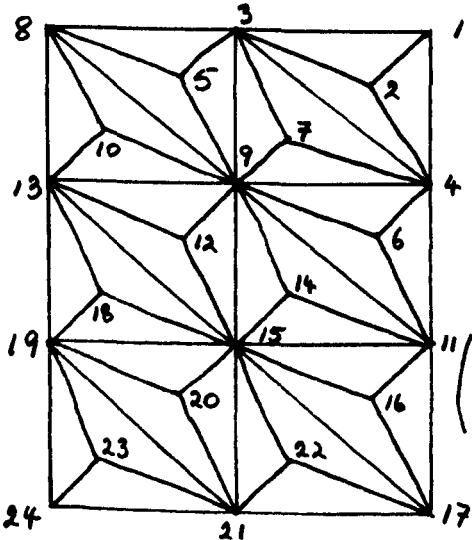
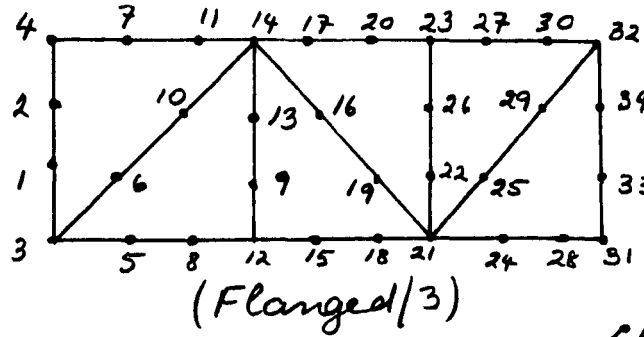
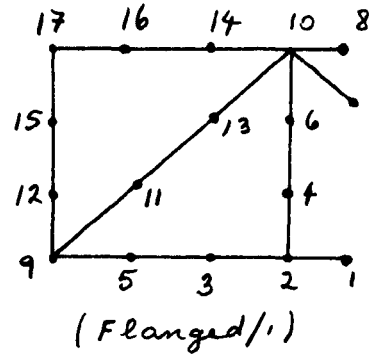
\* Machine not large enough to compute these stages for the given data.

(table 4.71)

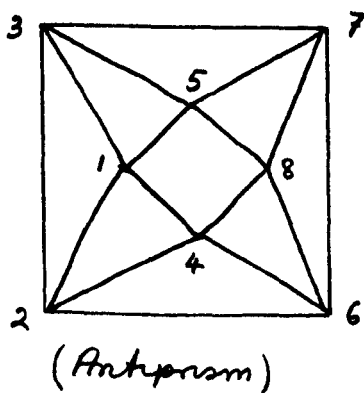
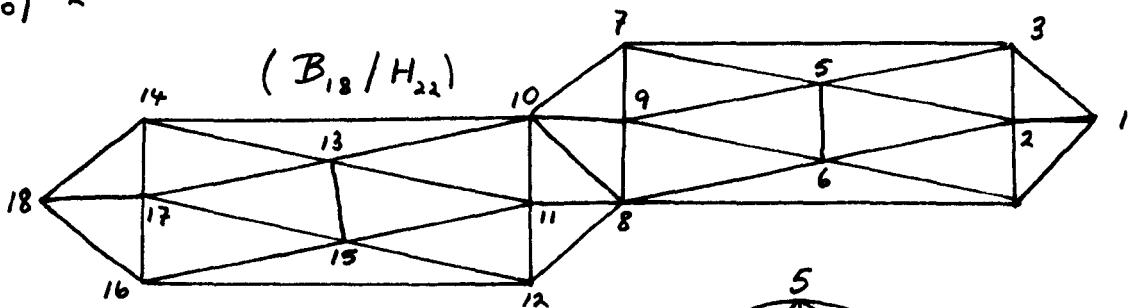
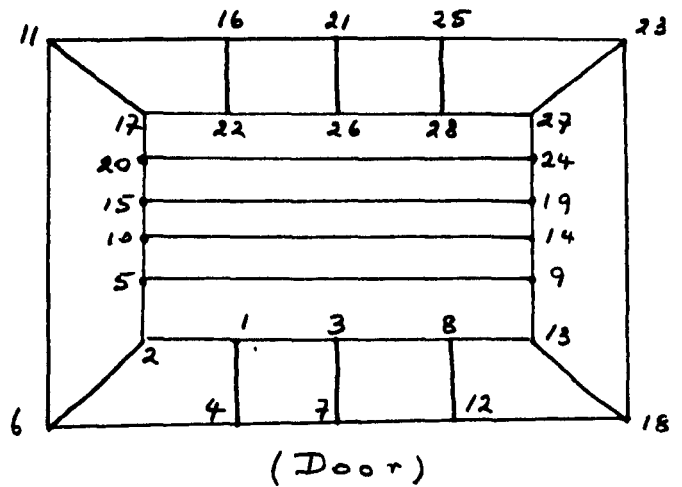
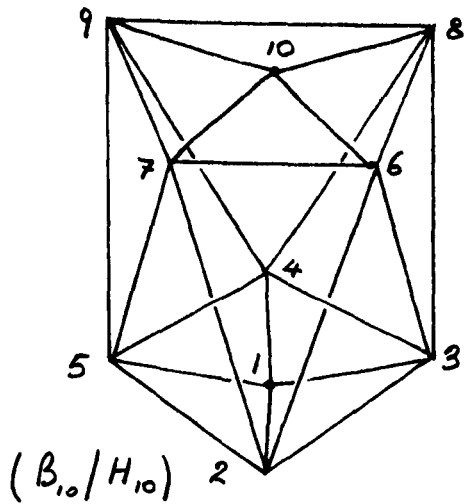
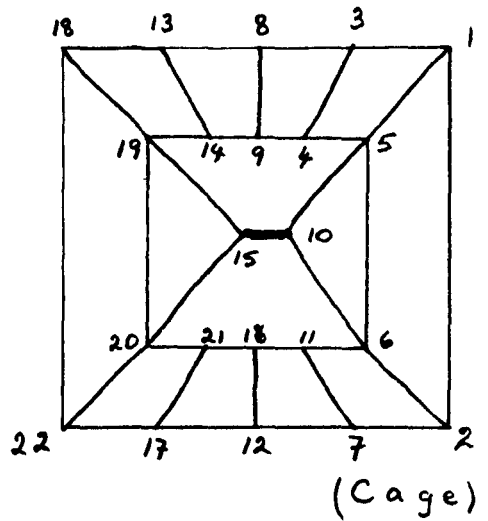
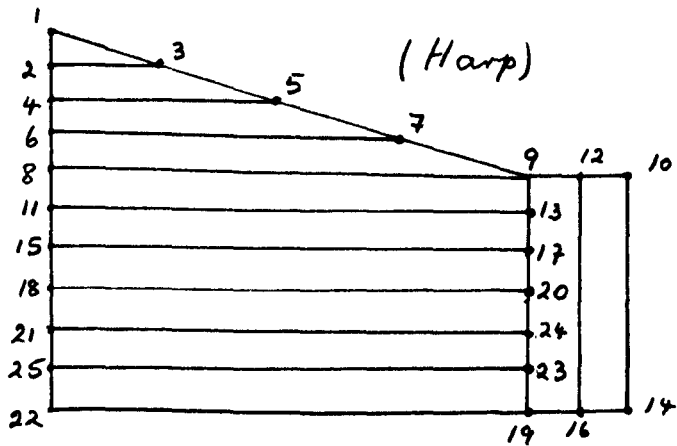
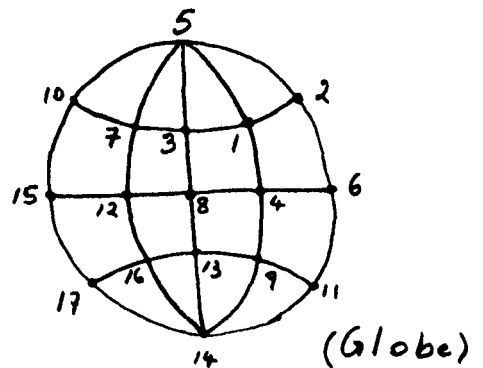
# Practical Data Table.

Title	z	br	Initial value of $ld(G)$	Value of $E(G) + ld(G)$ in all three stages. Times for each stage in minutes/secs..			
				1	2	3	3 only
Rectangle-3	20	36	15	4 37s.	4 33s.	4 8s.	7 15/14
Flanged/1	17	18	7	3 23s.	5 15s.	4 7/13	5 14/24
Flanged/2	27	30	6	4 1/22	5 1/46	4 14s.	4 20/10
Flanged/3	34	39	6	4 2/25	4 1/10	4 16s.	4 2/15
Silo/1	18	23	5	3	4	3	
Elec. Pylon	16	40	11	6 33s.	7 42s.	7 2/9	10 10/11
Tri- sected Semi-squares	24	59	10	7 1/35	8 1/11	7 6/42	10 10/10
Icosahedron	12	30	11	5 14s.	6 27s.	6 8s.	6 7/6
Harp	25	36	19	3 1/11	4 18s.	4 9/37	19 10/10
Cage	22	38	10	5 49s.	6 2m.	5 8/1	10 10/11
$B_{10}/H_{10}$	10	24	8	5 9s.	6 5s.	5 4s.	5 1/7
Antiprism	8	16	7	4 6s.	4 15s.	4 2s.	4 6s.
$B_{18}/H_{22}$	18	41	12	4 35s.	5 31s.	4 12/16	12 12/16
Door	28	42	23	4 1/27	6 53s.	6 8/10	23 18/1
Globe	17	32	5	5 3s.	6 1/40	5 10s.	5 6s.

(table 4.71 A)



(figs. 4.72)


$$\begin{pmatrix} f.g. \\ 4.73 \end{pmatrix}$$


V    SHORTEST DISTANCES ON A DIGRAPH .

---

5.1 General Discussion.

Within a graph we defined (in Ch. 1.23.1)

$\mu_m [ v_i, v_j ]$  to be the shortest path between  $v_i$  and  $v_j$ , and  $l( \mu_m [ v_i, v_j ] )$  to be the length of, or the number of lines in it. Let us extend this definition to cost associated digraphs so that for any two points  $v_i, v_j$  within it, we define  $\mu_m [ v_i, v_j ]$  to be the path with least cost ( or shortest distance ) from  $v_i$  to  $v_j$ , i.e. if  $(u_1, u_2, \dots, u_k)$  were to be any path from  $v_i$  to  $v_j$  then

$$\text{cost} ( \mu_m [ v_i, v_j ] ) = \text{Min} ( \sum_{f=1}^k \text{cost}(u_f) ).$$

If there is no path from  $v_i$  to  $v_j$  then the shortest distance between them in that direction is put at infinity.

We can now define three closely related problems. The problems are to find the shortest distance ( and/or routes ) between

- 1) two specific points of the digraph,
- 2) one specific point and the remainder of the points of the digraph, and
- 3) all pairs of points of the digraph.

Considerable work has been done on these problems, ( a general discussion on all the methods will be found in [ 55 ] ) , and all the algorithms to solve them fall into two categories. The first, called by some authors the matrix method , finds the shortest distances between all pairs of points simultaneously ( and hence also solving problems 1) and 2) at the same time ). The matrix methods give us the shortest distances between all pairs of points, but extra computation is necessary if the routes or paths yielding these distances are also required. The second method, sometimes referred to as the tree method, is used specifically to solve problems 1) and 2). However, it can be applied repeatedly and hence to solve problem 3). The tree methods, due to the nature of their construction, yield both the shortest distance and a shortest path between pairs of points.

The author investigated the matrix methods and wrote a program for the most efficient one within this category, the Cascade method of Farbey et al [ 49 ]. The tree methods were then examined and two programs were written using the techniques developed within this thesis.

The matrix methods are very easy to code (for a computer), and the Cascade method was found to be especially easy and elegant. However the matrix algorithms are very space consuming ( requiring storage of the order  $z^2$ , at least ), and do not compensate for this by a reduction in speed. The tree technique, as in the programs written by the author, required slightly more laborious programming and as a result are more complicated to follow. But they use far less store ( of the order  $z+br$  ) and do provide a shortest route while computing the shortest distance between pairs of points. A brief discussion of each method will follow.

## 5.2 The Matrix Methods.

We have a cost associated digraph with no loops or multiple connections, and whose costs associated with each arc are non-negative. The information can be stored, as described in Ch. 2.11.1, in an adjacency type cost matrix  $D$ , where  $d_{ij}$  represents the cost to be associated with the arc  $(i - j)$ . If there is no arc joining  $v_i$  to  $v_j$ , we put  $d_{ij}$  equal to infinity. For computational purposes this was set at  $10^4$ . We also make, for all  $i$ ,  $d_{ii} = 0$ . We define a new operation min-add, denoted by the operator  $*$ , between two square matrices  $A, B$ , such that  $A * B = C$  where  $C$  is  $(z \times z)$  and

$$c_{ij} = \min_{\forall k} \{ a_{ik} + b_{kj} \} \quad \text{----- ( 5.2 A )}$$

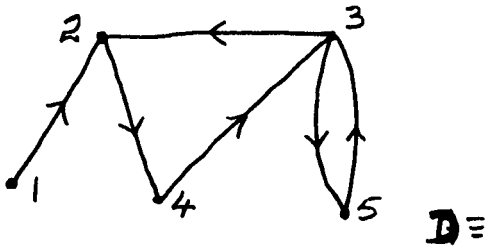
Suppose that we now perform this operation upon  $D$ , the cost matrix of above. We have  $D^2 = D * D$ , and  $D^2$  will give the length of the shortest paths, of not more than two arcs between all pairs of points. This is very easy to see when we examine the operation as defined by ( 5.2A ) in more detail. We vary  $k$  over all points of the digraph so that  $d_{ij}^2$  ( $\in D^2$ ) will automatically have the least value of the distance from  $v_i$  to a third point, and from there to  $v_j$ . ( This third point may be  $v_j$  itself ).

Similarly, we can obtain  $D^3$ , the matrix of shortest paths of not more than three arcs between all pairs of points by the operation  $D^2 * D$  or  $D * D^2$ .  $D^4$  can be obtained from  $D^3 * D$ ,  $D * D^3$  or  $D^2 * D^2$  thus giving us an indication of how to accelerate the process. This process terminates when either  $D^{m+1} = D^m$  or  $D^{2^k} = D^m$  ( depending upon which method is adopted ). It can be seen that this will be a lengthy process.

Let us assess the amount of storage required if we choose the accelerated method, i.e. we repeatedly perform  $D^{2^k} := D^{2^{k-1}} * D^{2^{k-1}}$ , replacing  $D^{2^{k-1}}$  by  $D^{2^k}$  each time. Because we have to compare  $D^{2^k}$  with  $D^{2^{k-1}}$ , we shall have to store both of them thus requiring a storage of the order of  $2 \times z^{2^k}$  elements.

## 5.21 The Cascade Algorithm.

This algorithm is a great improvement upon the general matrix methods just described. It uses far less store, of the order of  $z^2$  and requires only two matrix min-add operations only. It forms the matrices  $D^A$  and  $D^B$  in a similar way as the general matrix method forms  $D^2$  and  $D^3$ . The general matrix method computed the elements of  $D^{d^{+1}}$  (or  $D^{2j}$ ) from those of the matrix obtained in the previous iteration, i.e.  $D^d$ . The Cascade Algorithm however, forms  $D^A$  within  $D$  itself. That is, the elements of  $D$  are replaced one by one, by those of  $D^A$  and the min-add operations are carried out over the elements of this 'hybrid' matrix. The ordering of the computation of the elements of  $D^A$  is all important and it is downwards by rows and from left to right, i.e. we compute  $d_{11}^A, d_{12}^A, \dots, d_{1z}^A, d_{21}^A, \dots, d_{2z}^A, \dots, d_{z1}^A, \dots, d_{zz}^A$ .  $D^B$  is formed from  $D^A$  (as  $D^A$  was formed from  $D$ ) but in the reverse order, i.e. by rows upwards and from right to left.  $d_{zj}^B (\in D^B)$  now holds the value of the shortest distance from  $v_i$  to  $v_j$ . Farbey et al prove that these two passes are sufficient and have provided a very efficient algorithm. As an example of the method the matrices  $D$ ,  $D^A$  and  $D^B$  are shown next to the corresponding cost associated digraph of fig. 5.211.



(fig. 5.211)

$D \equiv$

$$\begin{bmatrix} 0 & 2 & X & X & X \\ X & 0 & X & 1 & X \\ X & 3 & 0 & X & 1 \\ X & X & 2 & 0 & X \\ X & X & 1 & X & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$D^A \equiv \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 2 & X & 3 & X \\ X & 0 & 3 & 1 & X \\ X & 3 & 0 & 4 & 1 \\ X & 5 & 2 & 0 & 3 \\ X & 4 & 1 & 5 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

$D^B$

$$\begin{bmatrix} 0 & 2 & 5 & 3 & 6 \\ X & 0 & 3 & 1 & 4 \\ X & 3 & 0 & 4 & 1 \\ X & 5 & 2 & 0 & 3 \\ X & 4 & 1 & 5 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

( where X stands for infinity )

However in common with the other matrix methods, the Cascade method does not give us the minimal routes . The authors do indicate how this could be done but it entails double the storage and of course will take much longer. Land and Stairs [5/] have extended the method to deal with large digraphs by means of partitioning but the essence of simplicity as characterized by their original algorithm has been lost.

### 5.3 The Tree Methods.

Most tree methods written to solve problem 2) have one point in common. The minimal solution is in the form of a maximal spanning directed rooted tree where a shortest route between the root and any other point is a path of the directed rooted tree ( d-r tree ). G.Dantzig [ 47 ] prefers to start with any maximal spanning d-r tree and by means of additions and deletions to it, obtain the minimal solution . To each point of the d-r tree is attached its current distance from the root ( via a path of the d-r tree ). An arc  $l_1$  is chosen from the cotree and added to the d-r tree. If this results in a point having lesser distance from the root, one of the arcs  $l_2$  in the resulting circuit is deleted and returned to the cotree. (  $l_2$  will be that arc of the d-r tree which has the same terminal point as  $l_1$  ). We also alter the current distances appropriately. If when we have inserted the arc  $l_1$  into the d-r tree there is no improvement, we return  $l_1$  back to the cotree. Another arc  $l_3$  is chosen from the cotree and the process repeated. The algorithm terminates when no improvement occurs for the addition of any arc of the cotree. This method is slow and inefficient because in the worst case we may have to examine every possible path out of the root. At each stage the choice is made from all the arcs of the cotree

to see if any of them might improve the solution, for the rejection of an arc does not necessarily mean that it cannot appear in the final solution.

Moore [53] suggests a much improved algorithm. He builds a least cost maximal spanning d-r tree from the root outwards such that at any stage of this mushrooming process, only a small subset of the arcs of the co-tree are examined. It is very similar to the authors second program called Shortest Route 2 ( which was written before the author realized the existence of Moores algorithm ).

The author wrote two programs, Shortest Route 1 and 2 to solve problem 2) . Shortest Route 1 is a specialised program which assumes that the cost of each arc is the same. Shortest Route 2 is the more generalized program which gives the least cost maximal spanning d-r tree for each point of the digraph in turn (and hence solves problem 3)). In both cases , as a result of the representation of the data, the size of the problem to be solved is not limited by  $z$ , the number of points but by  $br$ , the number of arcs in the digraph. Using the branches list representation ( Chpt. 2.11.1 ) the more generalized method, Shortest Route 2, requires storage of the order  $2 br + 5 z$ . (However in the Algol program, because of the inability of being able to do any list processing, the storage had to be

set at  $2br + 9z$  .  $5z$  locations never being , at any instant, more than two fifths full of necessary information. )

The discussion has been primarily the use of tree methods on the solving of problems 2) and 3) . T. Nicholson [69a] has devised an algorithm which solves problem 1) . This is also a type of mushrooming process . He mushrooms out , as we do in both the Shortest Routes methods , but from the two points simultaneously . When the two d-r trees ( one with reverse direction to the other ) meet he obtains as a result the shortest route and distance between them. He uses a technique first proposed by Minty ( in [55] ) in order not to cover more points of the digraph than necessary. He carries a minimum distance counter for each d-r tree such that the current distance of any point from ( or to ) the root is the least distance if it has value less than the corresponding counter. Thus he confines himself to expanding from the points that have current distance value equal to the counter distance. This is necessarily a slow process if at each iteration only one point at a time is added and this will occur if the costs ( of each arc ) are either all unequal or very nearly so.

### 5.31 Shortest Route 1.

We assume in this case that the cost to be associated with each arc is unity . Thus the cost of a path between any two points is equal to the number of arcs within it. We can now use the mushrooming r-tree technique to solve problem 2) .

A root point is chosen and we insert into the d-r tree (which we are going to build up) all points adjacent from the root. These points will be a distance of one unit away from the root. In the next or second iteration we examine these points and include in the d-r tree all points adjacent to them and not already in the d-r tree. These adjacent points will be a distance of two units away from the root. We continue these iterations so that at the  $k^{\text{th}}$  iteration we include in the d-r tree all points  $v_j$  , adjacent to those just added in the previous iteration and not already in the d-r tree, i.e.  $l(\mu[v_{\text{root}}, v_j]) = k$  . The process terminates when no new points can be added to the d-r tree.

Thus we mushroom out from the root examining all minimal routes leading away from it . As soon as a point is introduced into the d-r tree we examine all points adjacent from it . This means that all arcs emanating from that point have been examined. Thus in the next and subsequent iterations the point and its arcs will never be con-

sidered again. As a result the building of a maximal spanning d-r tree requires only  $br$  examinations of the adjacency matrix ( or in the actual program , of the branches list representation ).

In the program the mushrooming d-r tree is stored in the below array and when it has been constructed, we find the shortest distance from the root to any point, and a path yielding this distance, by running down the d-r tree from the point to the root. In this and the next program this results in the route being given back to front. Instead of the first label in the sequence being the root and the last the terminal point of the path , we have the terminal point appearing first and the root, last. This is in order to aid the programming . Otherwise, while running down the d-r tree, we would have to store the points and then output them in the reverse order.

Shortest Route 1 is similar in idea to, but more powerful than, Mintys solution to problem 2) [52]. The difference is that he confines himself to graphs where he obtains a string model of the graph [ Chpt. 4.51 ], holds it up by the root and hence obtains a mushrooming r-tree. This simple idea, for obvious reasons, cannot be extended to digraphs.

### 5.32 Shortest Route 2.

Within a digraph it is more usual to find the associated costs to be different (e.g. the distances of a road) and so the algorithm just described is inadequate. The one to be described is not altogether different from the previous one and is similar in theory to dynamic programming. Let us define  $f_k(i, j)$  to be the least distance from  $v_i$  to  $v_j$ , of  $k$  or less arcs. Dynamic programming formulation of the problem would be  $f_1(i, j) = \text{cost}(i, j)$  and

$$f_{k+1}(i, j) = \min_{\forall l} \{f_k(i, l) + \text{cost}(l, j)\}.$$

If  $v_i$  remains constant, in our case it will be the root of the mushrooming  $r$ -tree, we obtain  $f_1(j) = \text{cost}(\text{root}, j)$ ,

$$f_{k+1}(j) = \min \{f_k(l) + \text{cost}(l, j)\},$$

over all  $v_l$  adjacent to  $v_j$ .

Let the incomplete mushrooming  $d$ - $r$  tree of the  $k^{\text{th}}$  iteration be denoted by  $T_k$ , where the paths in  $T_k$  are the shortest distance paths from the root to any point in  $T_k$  of  $k$  or less arcs. We thus have  $f_k(j)$  for all  $v_j$  in  $T_k$ . Denote by  $M_k$  the set of points whose  $f_k$  values have been either computed or recomputed in the  $k^{\text{th}}$  iteration.  $M_k$  will not contain the points of  $T_k$  whose  $f_k$  value equals their  $f_{k-1}$  value.

Consider the expansion of the d-r tree in the  $(k+1)$ <sup>st</sup> iteration. A point  $v_t$  adjacent to  $v_s$  in  $M_k$  (from whose points the expansion is being made) will fall into one of three categories :

- 1/. It is not a member of  $T_k$  nor of  $T_{k+1}$ ,
- 2/. it is not a member of  $T_k$  but is of  $T_{k+1}$ ,
- 3/. it is a member of  $T_k$ .

Suppose  $v_t$  belongs to the first category. We incorporate it into  $T_{k+1}$  by means of the arc  $(s - t)$  and put  $f'_{k+1}(t) := f_k(s) + \text{cost}(s, t)$ . The dash over the  $f$  denotes that the value contained within  $f'_{k+1}$  need not necessarily be the final one. It becomes final at the start of the next iteration.

For practical purposes the second and third categories can be regarded together. Suppose that  $v_t$  belongs to either  $T_k$  or  $T_{k+1}$ , i.e.  $f_k(t)$  or  $f'_{k+1}(t)$  has already been computed. We test to see whether the path to  $v_t$  from the root via  $v_s$  has lesser cost than the existing one. We test if  $f_k(t) \leq f_k(s) + \text{cost}(s, t)$ , for  $v_t$  in  $T_k$  ( or if  $f'_{k+1}(t) \leq f_k(s) + \text{cost}(s, t)$ , for  $v_t$  in  $T_{k+1}$  ). If the condition is satisfied ( i.e. the existing path has equal or less cost than the proposed new one) we make  $f'_{k+1}(t) := f_k(t)$ . If the condition is not satisfied, we alter the path from

the root to  $v_t$  by adding the arc  $(s - t)$  to  $T_k$  and deleting the other arc incident to  $v_t$  in the resulting circuit, and making  $f'_{k+1}(t) := f_k(s) + \text{cost}(s, t)$ .

It now remains to state that for all points  $v_j$  in  $T_k$  for which  $f_{k+1}(j)$  has not been computed ( because they were not adjacent to a member in  $M_k$  ) will have  $f_{k+1}(j) := f_k(j)$  . If  $M_k$  is empty, this means that  $T_k = T_{k+1}$ , and that for any point within  $T_k$  , we have not found a shorter distance from the root of  $k + 1$  arcs. Hence this indicates the termination of the process.

Computationally we only have to carry one array  $f[j]$  .  $f[j]$  will store the latest value of  $f_k(j)$ . When we form  $f_{k+1}(j)$  we insert the new value into  $f[j]$ , overwriting the previous value ( whether it had been  $f_k(j)$  or  $f'_{k+1}(j)$  ). The array  $f[j]$  corresponds to the 'labels' of Moores algorithm as described in [55]. Finally, we can regard all the three categories as one. This is achieved by initially making  $f[j] := \infty$  ( or some other large number ) for all  $j$  in the digraph. When we meet a point  $v_t$  we test whether  $f[t] > f[s] + \text{cost}[s, t]$ . If  $>$  holds true, we alter  $f[t]$  and the path from the root to  $v_t$  , otherwise we do nothing. With a little thought it will be seen that this does in fact cover all three categories.

If we let  $n(M_k)$  be the number of points in  $M_k$ , it was found that for non-planar digraphs  $\sum n(M_k)$  over all  $k$  of the computation, varied between two and three times the number of points in the digraph. This seems to agree with Moores proposition that for planar digraphs, a point will not on average occur more than twice in  $\sum M_k$  ( for all  $M_k$  in the computation ).

### 5.3 Conclusion.

The Cascade and Shortest Route 2 programs were run on sets of random data with the number of points varying from 10 to 85 . Table 5.31 shows the time taken by each program for each set of data. We see from the time ratio column ( Shortest Route 2 divided by Cascade ) that Cascade is anything up to twice as fast for small digraphs and just faster for medium sized digraphs. However at  $z=70$  and density of 5 % , Shortest Route 2 takes no longer and for  $z=85$  and density of both 5 % and 9 % , it is faster.

Let us see how the two algorithms, as examples of each of the two main methods , compare with each other. The Cascade algorithm will be obviously inefficient on problems 1) and 2) . To use it on the two mentioned types of problems would be similar to using a sledgehammer to crack a nut. Let us assess the two algorithms on problem 3) where we do not require the shortest routes. We see that the Cascade algorithm will be faster for small and medium sized digraphs , regardless of their density . However for large sparse digraphs, Shortest Route 2 is as good if not faster than Cascade. If we wish to find the shortest routes as well as the shortest distances ( to problem 3) ) Shortest Route 2 will be as fast or faster than the appropriately modified Cascade algorithm.

Title	z	br	density	Time taken by		<u>S.R.2</u>
				Cascade	S.R.2	Cascade
14/1	10	51	50 %	4 s.	10 s.	2.5
14/2	10	24	25 %	3 s.	8 s.	2.7
14/3	10	5	5 %	2 s.	5 s.	2.5
14/4	30	428	48 %	47 s.	1m.45s.	2.2
14/5	30	249	28 %	47 s.	1m.35s.	2.0
14/6	30	64	7 %	45 s.	1m.31s.	2.0
14/7	30	32	4 %	43 s.	55 s.	1.3
14/8	50	958	38 %	3m.5s.	5m.28s.	1.8
14/9	50	492	20 %	3m.7s.	4m.41s.	1.5
14/10	50	206	8 %	3m.4s.	4m.22s.	1.4
14/11	50	95	4 %	2m.56s.	3m.52s.	1.3
14/12	70	1283	26 %	8m.2s.	10m.40s.	1.3
14/13	70	402	8 %	8m.1s.	8m.42s.	1.1
14/14	70	192	4 %	8m.	7m.59s.	1.0
14/15	85	665	9 %	13m.44s.	13m.16s.	1.0
14/16	85	350	5 %	13m.42s.	13m.12s.	1.0

(table 5.31)

## VI THE TRANSPORTATION PROBLEM .

### 6.1 General Discussion.

The author reveals no new method or theory to solve the Transportation Problem. This is a short note on how the problem can be tackled by means of tree manipulation, the original method being due to H.I.Scoins, and how it could be improved by using some of the ideas expounded in previous chapters. Let us briefly state the problem.

We have  $m$  supply depots (or transmitters) each capable of supplying  $a_i$  ( $1 \leq i \leq m$ ) units of goods and  $n$  demand depots (or receivers) each requiring  $b_j$  ( $1 \leq j \leq n$ ) units. We are also given a cost matrix  $c_{ij} \in C$ , which indicates the cost of transporting one unit from supply depot  $i$  to demand depot  $j$ . We also specify that

$$\sum_{i=1}^m a_i = \sum_{j=1}^n b_j .$$

The problem is, given the above conditions which is the cheapest way to meet the demand at the receivers from the transmitters. Mathematically, if  $x_{ij}$  were to represent the number of units sent from transmitter  $i$  to receiver  $j$ , we have  $\sum_{i=1}^m x_{ij} = b_j$  and  $\sum_{j=1}^n x_{ij} = a_i$ , for all

$i$  and  $j$ , and we wish to minimise the function

$$b(x_{ij}) = \sum_{i=1}^m \sum_{j=1}^n c_{ij} x_{ij} .$$

Any basic feasible solution

will contain only  $(n + m - 1)$   $x$  not equal to zero. In fact the basic feasible solution can always be represented as a spanning tree of the graph of  $n + m$  points. For a further discussion on the subject reference should be made to [6',62].

The general method of solution is to obtain an initial basic feasible solution and then iterate upon it always finding better solutions, till the best solution is converged upon. Thus there is a natural division into two parts: that of finding the initial tree and that of manipulating this tree into others with better cost solutions.

## 6.2 Obtaining the Initial Tree.

There is more than one method of obtaining an initial basic solution: the minimum row method, the minimum matrix method , the N-W corner method to name a few. However according to [6/ ] there is no advantage in using any particular method in order to obtain a smaller initial cost or reduce the number of iterations in the second stage. It seems that little work has been done in order to establish either mathematically or statistically the superiority of any one method.

The method chosen to be used in the program was the modified North-West corner method. This was incorporated in the procedure called Treeform . The procedure described the tree in the below array, the ordering of the tree not being made till the second stage. The ordering is necessary in order to be able to manipulate the (basic solution) tree into another with lesser cost.

### 6.3 Obtaining the Final Solution.

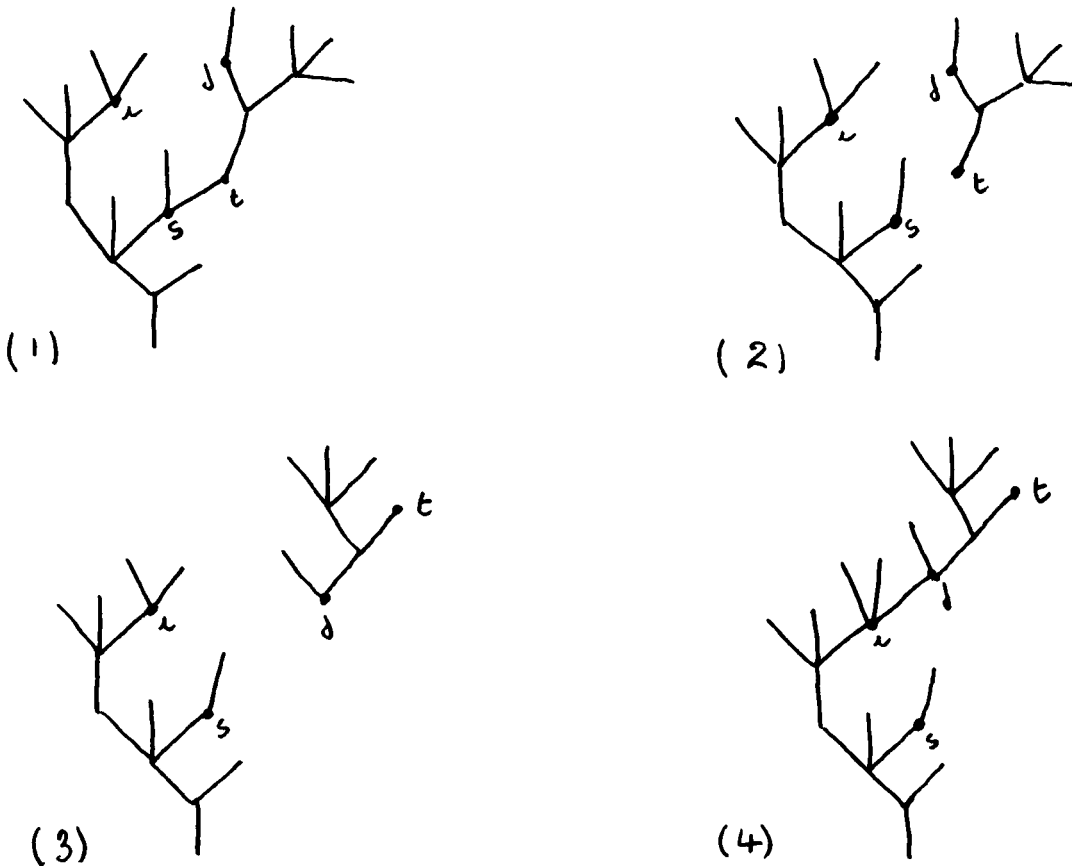
The method used in the program is sometimes referred to as the Stepping-stone Algorithm. A slight explanation will follow but it will be illustrated in terms of the basic tree solution. Suppose we have a basic feasible solution  $T_k$  as a result of the  $k^{\text{th}}$  iteration. We now compute the shadow costs for each of the  $n + m$  points. The shadow cost of the root is made equal to zero. From the root we go up the  $\rho$ -tree (using the process procedure) calculating the other  $n + m - 1$  shadow costs from the formula  $\text{shadow}[j] := \text{cost}[i, j] - \text{shadow}[i]$ , where  $\text{shadow}[i]$  has already been computed. In the program the formula becomes  $\text{shadow}[j] := \text{cost}[i, \text{below}[j]] - \text{shadow}[\text{below}[j]]$ .

Having computed the shadow costs,  $\text{shadow}[i]$ , for all  $n + m$  points the matrix is searched for the smallest value of  $\text{cost}[i, j] - \text{shadow}[i] - \text{shadow}[j] \leq 0$  --(5.3A). Scoins in his method adopts a threshold technique which combines the above process and the other of finding the first value of (5.3A) which is smaller than some preset level.

Having noted the desirable link  $(i-j)$  to be inserted, a simple circuit is formed in the  $\rho$ -tree and

the link to be deleted (within the circuit) quickly determined, (s-t) say. (s-t) will be the link in the circuit with the least associated load. The  $\rho$ -tree is now severed into two at (s-t). The subtree is inverted so as to make  $v_s$  ( or  $v_t$  ) as its root and added to the main  $\rho$ -tree at  $v_t$  ( or  $v_s$  ), thus defining a new tree  $T_{k+1}$ . This can be illustrated pictorially in fig. 5.31.

It will be noted from the figures in fig. 5.31 that in forming  $T_{k+1}$ , it will be unnecessary to recalculate all the shadow costs again. The only ones which will differ from those in  $T_k$  will be those in the subtree that has been inverted and attached elsewhere. Thus we can use the procedure process upon the subtree with  $v_t$  (in the figure) as root and recompute the shadow costs of its points. If the subtree is small, this will result in a large saving of work. Otherwise for each iteration the shadow costs of each of the  $n + m$  points will have to be recomputed. The procedures belonging to the program are printed in Appendix 5 and for any one who is interested, they do appear with quite self explanatory comments.



(fig. 5.31)

In (1) we have  $T_k$  and from the shadow costs we have worked out that  $(i-j)$  is to be inserted and  $(s-t)$  to be deleted. The deletion is done in (2) and the subtree at  $v_t$  is inverted so that  $v_j$  is its new root as in (3). It is now reattached to the main tree at  $v_u$  to form  $T_{k+1}$ .

#### 6.4 Conclusion.

The program as written by the author was not any faster than the one written by H.I.Scoins. That is the  $\rho$ -tree representation and manipulation program was not found to be faster than the  $r$ -tree one. The reason is that the procedures used within the authors program were written originally for the work of Chapters 3 and 4, where efficiency was not all important. In those chapters it was required to test ideas and this resulted in a small number of slow and inefficient procedures whose purpose was mainly to test some aspects of manipulation rather than find the best way of doing the actual manipulation. Thus there is scope for further work in finding how the most efficient program of each method compares with other.

R E F E R E N C E S .

Chapter 1.

- 1/. Berge,C. : Theory of Graphs and its Applications  
[ Translated by A. Doig, J.Wiley, London,1962 ]
- 2/. Cartwright,D.,Harary,F. and Norman ,R. : Structural  
Models. [ John Wiley,New York, 1965 ].
- 3/. Cayley,A. : Collected Mathematical Papers. Cambri-  
dge 1889 - 1897. Vol. 3 p.242, Vol.9 p.202,p427,  
Vol.11 p.365, Vol.13, p.26,p.265.
- 4/. Konig,D. : Theorie der Endlichen und Unendlichen  
Graphen. [ Leipzig, 1936. ]
- 5/. Ore,O. : Theory of Graphs. [ Amer. Math. Soc., Col-  
loquium Publications, Vol. XXXVIII (1962) ].
- 6/. ----- : Structures on Directed Graphs. [ Annals of  
Mathematics, v.63 (1956) p.383 ].
- 7/. Riordan,J. : An Introduction to Combinatorial  
Analysis . [ John Wiley , New York , (1958) ]
- 8/. Trent,H.M. : A Note on the Enumeration and Listing  
of all possible Trees in a Connected Linear Graph.  
[ Proc. Nat. Acad. Sciences, U.S.A. v.40 (1954) ].

Chapter 2.

- 9/. Bott,R. and Mayberry,J. : Matrices and Trees.  
[Economic Activity Analysis,Wiley,N.Y.1954,p.391]

- 10/. Erdos,P.,Goodman,A.,Pasa,L. : Representation of Graphs. [Canad. Jr. of Math. v.20, (1966) p.106]
- 11/. Neville,E.H. : The codifying of tree structures . [ Proc.Camb.Phil.Soc. v.49 (1953) p.381 ]
- 12/. Obruca,A.K. : An Investigation into Flat Rooted Trees. [M.Sc. Dissertation, Univ. of Durham (1963)]
- 13/. Okado,S. : Algebraic and Topological Foundations of Network Synthesis. [Proc.Symp.on Modern Network Synthesis , N.Y. ,1955, p.283 ]
- 14/. Perko,A. : Some Computational Notes on the Shortest Route Problem. [ B.C.J. ,v.8 ,(1965) p.19 ]
- 15/. Solomon,E.W. : A Comprehensive Program for Network Problems. [ B.C.J. v.3 (1961) p.89 ]

Chapter 3. 15/a. Barachet,L. : *Graphic soln. of the Travelling Salesman Problem.* [ Oper. Res. v. 5, (1957) p.841]

- 16/. Bellman,R. : Dynamic Programming Treatment of the Travelling Salesman Problem. [ J.A.C.M. v.9 (1962)]
- 17/. Croes,G.A. : A Method for Solving Travelling Salesman Problems. [ Oper.Res. v.6 (1958) p.791 ]
- 18/. Dantzig,G. et al : On a L.P. Combinatorial Approach to the Travelling Salesman Problem. [Rand Research Memorandum, RM - 2321 , (1959) ]
- 19/. ----- : Solution of a Large Scale Travelling Salesman Problem. [Oper.Res. v.2 (1954) p.393]

- 20/. Flood,M. : The Travelling Salesman Problem.  
[ Oper. Res. ,v.4 , (1956) p.61 ]
- 21/. Gilbert,E.N. : Random Minimal Trees. [ S.I.A.M.  
v.13 , (1965) p.376 ]
- 22/. Hammersley,J. and Handscomb,D. : Monte Carlo Methods.  
[ Methuen ( Monographs ) , London , 1964 , p.48 ]
- 23/. Held,M. and Karp,R. : A Dynamic Programming Approach  
to Sequencing Problems. [ S.I.A.M. v.10 (1962) p.196]
- 24/. Heller,I. : The Travelling Salesman Problem. Part 1,  
Basic Facts. [An Introduction to L.P. by Charnes,  
Cooper and Mellon. , J.Wiley , 1953 ]
- 25/. ----- : On the Travelling Salesman Problem. [Proc.  
2nd Symp. on L.P. (1955) NBS and HQ USAF ]
- 26/. Karel,C et al : An Algorithm for the Travelling  
Salesman Problem. [ Oper.Res. v.11 (1963) p.972 ]
- 27/. Kruskal,J.B. : On the Shortest Spanning Subtree of  
a Graph and a Travelling Salesman Problem.  
[ Proc. Amer. Math. Soc. v.7 (1956) p.48 ]
- 28/. Kuhn,H.W. : The Travelling Salesman Problem.[ Proc.  
of the VIth Symp. in Appl. Math. 1956 (edit.) Curtiss]
- 29/. Land,A.H. and Morton,G. : A Contribution to the Tra-  
velling Salesman Problem.[J.Roy.Stat.Soc.(B)v.17(1955)]
- 30/. Loberman,H. and Weinberger,A. : Formal Procedures for  
Connecting Terminals with a Minimal Total Wire Length.  
[ J.A.C.M. v.4 , (1957) p.428 ]

- 31/. Miller,C., Tucker,A. and Zemlin,R. : Integer Programming Formulation of the Travelling Salesman Problem. [ J.A.C.M. v.7 , no.4 (1960) p.326 ]
- 32/. Obruca,A.K. : Algorithm Mintree. [B.C.Bul. v.8(1964)]
- 33/. Robacker,J. : Some Experiments on the Travelling Salesman Problem. [ Rand Report, 1955 ]

#### Chapter 4.

- 34/. Alway,G. and Martin,D. : An algorithm for reducing the Bandwidth of a Matrix of Symmetrical Configuration. [ B.C.J. v.8 (1965) p.264 ]
- 35/. Braun,F.H. : Machine Analysis of Networks and its Applications. [ I.B.M. Techn. Report, TR 00.855 ]
- 36/. Carre,B.A. : The Partitioning of Network Equations for Block Iteration. [ B.C.J. v.9 (1966) p.84 ]
- 37/. Harper,L.H. : Optimal Assignments of Numbers to Vertices. [ S.I.A.M. v.12 (1964) p.131 ]
- 38/. Livesley,R. : The Analysis of Large Structural Systems. [ B.C.J. v.3 (1961) p.34 ]
- 39/. Porter,S. : The Use of Linear Graphs in Gauss Elimination. [ S.I.A.M. Review, v.3 (1961) p.119 ]
- 40/. Sato,N. and Tinney,W. : Technique for the Exploiting the Sparsity of the Network Admittance Matrix. [ I.E.E.E. Trans.on Power App. and Syst. N.69,p.944 ]
- 40/a. Livesley,R.K. : Matrix Methods of Structural Analysis. [ Pergamon Press, 1964 ]

- 41/. Varga, R.S. : Matrix Iterative Analysis. [ London, Prentice-Hall Int. (1962). ]
- 42/. Wilson, L.B. : Solution of Certain Large Sets of Equations on Pegasus using Matrix Methods.  
[ B.C.J. v.2 (1959) p.130 ]
- 42/a. *Garwick, J. : Solution of a linear system with a*  
Chapter 5. band coefficient matrix [ B.I.T. vol.3 (1963) p207 ].
- 43/. Beardwood, J., Halton, J. and Hammersley, J. : The Shortest Path through many Points. [ Proc. Camb. Phil. Soc. v.55 (1959) p.299 ]
- 44/. Bellman, R. : On a Routing Problem. [ Quart. Appl. Math. XVI , no.1 (1958) ]
- 45/. Busacker, R. and Saaty, T. : Finite Graphs and Networks: An Introduction with Applications.  
[ McGraw Hill, 1965, p.58. ]
- 46/. Clarke, S., Krikorian, A. and Rausen, J. : Computing the N Best Loopless Paths in a Network. [SIAM v.11(1963)]
- 47/. Dantzig, G. : Discrete Variable Extremum Problems.  
[ Oper. Res. v.5 (1957) p.266 ]
- 48/. Erdos, P. and Gallai, T. : On Maximal Paths and Circuits of a Graph. [ Acta Math. Acad. Hung. v.10 (1959) ]
- 49/. Farbey, B., Land, A. and Murchland, J. : The Cascade Algorithm for finding the Minimum Distances on a Graph. [ Private Communication, 1966 ]

- 50/. Hoffman, and Pavley : A Method for the Solution of the N Best Path Problem.[JACM v.6(1959)p.566]
- 51/. Land,A. and Stairs,S. : The Extension of the Cascade Algorithm to Large Graphs.[Private Comm.,1966]
- 52/. Minty,G.J. : A Comment on the Shortest Route Problem. [ Oper. Res. v.5 (1957) p.724 ]
- 53/. Moore,E. : The Shortest Path through a Maze.  
[Proc. of an Int.Symp.on the Theory of Switching,1957]  
[The Annals of the Computation Laboratory of Harvard University, (1959) Harvard Univ. Press]
- 54/. Narahon,Pandit : The Shortest Route Problem, an Addendum. [ Oper.Res. v.9 (1961) p.129 ]
- 55/. Pollack,M. and Wiebenson,W.: Solutions of the Shortest Route Problems: A Review. [Oper.Res. v.8 (1960) p.225]
- 56/. Prim,R.C. : Shortest Connection Matrix Network and Some Generalizations. [ Bell Systems Tech.Jr, v.36 (1957) p.1389 ]
- 57/. Rapaport,H. and Abramson,P. : An Analog Computer for finding an Optimum Route through a Communication Network. (1959) I.R.E. Trans.Comm.Syst.CS-7 p.37 ]
- 58/. Robbins,H.E. : A Theorem on Graphs, with an Application to a Problem of Traffic Control. [ Amer. Math. Monthly, v.46 (1939) p.281 ]

- 59/. Shimbel, A. : Structures in Communication Nets. [Proc. of Symp. on Inform. Netwks., Polyt. Inst. of Brooklyn (1954)]
- 60/. Verblunsky, S. : On the Shortest Path through a Number of Points. [Proc. Amer. Math. Soc. v.6 (1957) p.904]
- 60/a. *Nicholson, T. A. : Finding the Shortest Route between*  
Chapter 6. Two points in a network. [British Joint Comp. Conf. Eastbourne, 1966]
- 61/. Gass, S. : Linear Programming Methods and Applications. McGraw Hill, 1958 , p.137.
- 62/. Vajda, S. : Mathematical Programming. Addison Wesley. 1961, p.117.

APPENDIX 1.

App. 1.1 Trees.

When applying trees to solve or help solve a given problem , we find all three types : trees, r-trees and  $\varrho$ -trees. Trees and r-trees are represented in the below array. This means that trees are made rooted by designating one of their points as the root . However if it is required to manipulate them (e.g. Toptree) then the r-trees have to be planarized or ordered and made into  $\varrho$ -trees. This, as explained in Chapter 2 , is in order to be able to process them. The representation to be used will be the rd,lu one in all cases.

The rd,lu representation takes slightly longer to find the below of a point than does the below, posnbr representation. But the procedure which accomplishes this, is very simple and can be defined recursively as

```
integer procedure belnext(rd,a);  
value a; integer a; integer array rd;  
belnext:= if rd[a]<0 then -rd[a]  
          else if rd[a]=a then a  
          else belnext(rd,a);
```

Similarly positive neighbour can be defined recursively as (overleaf)

```
integer procedure  nbr next(rd,a);  
value a;  integer a;  integer array  rd;  
nbr next:= if rd[a]=a then  0  
           else  if rd[a]>0 then  rd[a]  
           else  nbr next(rd,-rd[a]);
```

The rd,lu representation with the addition of the above two procedures can accomplish all that the below, pos nbr representation could, plus the ability of being able to go up the  $\varrho$ -tree.

The most useful procedure written within this thesis is the next one to be defined and it gives us the means of analysing each point of the  $\varrho$ -tree in turn. It is an integer procedure called process, which takes the value of a different point upon each call. The first time a boolean identifier is set true (and within the procedure it is reset false) and the call yields the root of the subtree specified by another identifier boot. That is, the procedure will take on all the values of the points of the subtree at  $v_{boot}$ ,  $v_{boot}$  being the first to be presented. When all the points have been exhausted, the procedure becomes zero. The ordering, as can be seen from the procedure, is up left and across .

```
integer procedure process(rd,lu,first,boot); value boot;
integer boot; boolean first; integer array rd,lu;
begin own integer b;
    if first then begin first:=false;
                                process:=b:=boot;
                                end
    else process:=b:=if lu[b]>0 and lu[b]≠b then lu[b]
                                else nbr next(rd,b);
end process;
```

As explained before, process will not yield a point, before the point below it has already been presented. Thus in Chapter 6, this has been put to good use, when computing the shadow costs of each point. We let the shadow cost at the root equal zero and the ordering of the computation of the other shadow costs is by means of process. The procedure is reasonably efficient, however it will take slightly longer to obtain the points of a high  $\epsilon$ -tree than those of a shorter  $\epsilon$ -tree due to the more frequent use of recursive calls.

The last three procedures will be of general use to those who wish to manipulate  $\epsilon$ -trees whilst using the rd, lu representation. The next few procedures are more specialized and within the thesis have been used in Chapters 3 (for which they were originally written) and 6.

Rather than store the generation number of each point within a  $q$ -tree and recomputing them if and when we alter the  $q$ -tree, a recursive procedure was written which gave the generation number of a point when called. This admittedly is slower, but if not used too often, justifies itself by the saving in space. The method is to go down the  $q$ -tree until the root is reached and in the process count the number of steps taken.

```
integer procedure  gnrd(rd,a);
value a; integer a;  integer array rd;
gnrd:= if rd[a]=a then 1 else  gnrd(rd,belnext(rd,a))+1;
```

Given a  $q$ -tree,  $T_c$ , it may be required to cut it into two parts,  $T'$  and  $T^2$ , by deleting (c-d) where  $v_a$  will remain connected to the root of  $T'_c$ , i.e. belong to the lower subtree  $T'$ . The procedure written to accomplish this was called Treecut. The procedure Newtree, when given a  $q$ -tree rooted at  $v_c$ , alters its configuration so that it becomes rooted at  $v_b$ . Finally the procedure Fixtop joins or connects the two subtrees  $T'$  and  $T^2$  at the points  $v_a$  of  $T'$  to  $v_b$  of  $T^2$ . All these three procedures are used in Chapter 3, <sup>and 6.</sup> ~~whereas Newtree is omitted in Chapter 5, Shortest Routes 2, as we are not interested in changing the root of  $T$ , but merely in joining the root of  $T$  to a different point in  $T$ .~~

All three procedures use a procedure called `toleft`, which when given a point,  $v_a$  of  $T$ , will yield the top most left point of the subtree within which  $v_a$  is the root.

```
integer procedure toleft(a,lu);  
value a; integer a; integer array lu;  
begin integer j,k;  
    j:=a;  
    for k:=lu[j] while k > 0 and j≠k do j:=k;  
    toleft:=j;  
end toleft;
```

```
procedure Treecut(c,d,rd,lu); value c,d;  
integer c,d; integer array rd,lu;  
begin integer h,j,k,l,t;  
    k:=lu[d];  
    l:=rd[c];  
    t:=toleft(c,lu);  
    if k≠c then begin for j:=k,rd[h] while j≠c do h:=j;  
        rd[h]:=l;  
    end
```

```
else    if d+l=0 then    lu[d]:=if lu[t]=t then d else lu[t]
        else    begin      j:=topleft(l,lu);
                        lu[j]:=if lu[t]=t then j else lu[t];
                        lu[d]:=l;
                        end;
    rd[c]:=c;    lu[t]:=t;
end Treecut ;
```

```
procedure Fixtop(b,a,rd,lu);    value b,a;
integer b,a;    integer array rd,lu;
begin    integer u,v,w;
    v:=lu[a];
    u:=topleft(b,lu);
    if v<0 or v=a then
        begin        rd[b]:=-a;
                    lu[u]:= if v=a then u else v;
        end
    else    begin        rd[b]:=v;
                    w:=topleft(a,lu);
                    lu[u]:= if lu[w]=w then u else lu[w];
                    lu[w]:= -a;
        end;
    lu[a]:=b;
end Fixtop;
```

```
procedure   Newtree(b,c,rd,lu);   value b,c;
integer   b,c;   integer array rd,lu;
begin   integer j,k,l;
           integer array   red[0:abs(genrd(rd,b)-genrd(rd,c))+2];

procedure   newrd(a);   value a;   integer   a;
begin   integer j,m;
           if   a=1 then
               begin   if lu[red[a+1]]≠red[a] then
                           begin   for j:=lu[red[a+1]],pd[j] while j≠red[a]
                                   do m:=j;           rd[m]:=rd[rd[m]];
                           end;
                           rd[red[a+1]]:= if   lu[red[a]]>0 and
                                   lu[red[a]]≠red[a] then lu[red[a]] else -red[a]
                           end
           else begin   if lu[red[a+1]]≠red[a] then
                           begin   for j:=lu[red[a+1]],rd[j]
                                   while j≠red[a] do   m:=j;
                                   rd[m]:=rd[pd[m]];
                           end;
                           rd[red[a+1]]:= if   lu[red[a]]≠red[a-1] then
                                   lu[red[a]] else   if rd[red[a-1]] > 0
                                   then rd[red[a-1]] else -red[a];
                           end;
           end newrd ;
```

```
procedure    newlu(a,k,l,b); value  a,k,l,b;
integer    a,k,l,b;
if red[a-1]≠lu[red[a]] then
    begin    lu[topleft(red[a],lu)]:=if a≠k then -red[a]
            else topleft(red[a],lu);
            if a≠k then lu[red[a]]:=red[a+1];
    end
else  if a=k and l>0 then
    begin    lu[topleft(l,lu)]:= topleft(l,lu);
            lu[red[a]]:=1;
    end
    else  if a=k then    lu[red[a]]:= red[a]
            else    lu[red[a]]:=red[a+];

    if  b≠c then
        begin    red[1]:=b;  for j:=2,j+1 while red[j-1]≠c do
            begin    red[j]:=belnext(rd,red[j-1]); k:=j; end;
            l:=rd[red[k-1]];  red[0]:=red[k+1]:=0;
            for j:=k-1 step -1 until 1 do    newrd(j);
            rd[red[1]]:=red[1];
            for j:=k step -1 until 1 do    newlu(j,k,l,b);
        end;
end Newtree;
```

The following 7 procedures are used to order a r-tree so that it may be manipulated by some of the previously described procedures. An ordering is defined on the points so that each point has a value, quite arbitrary of course, for the array pos nbr. This is done by means of the procedure Planarize. The representation is now altered into the rd, lu representation by means of the procedures Convrd and Convlv. An example of the use of these procedures is in Toptree. The spanning tree for a graph is obtained in a rooted form and before it can be manipulated by the procedures Treecut, Newtree, etc., the r-tree has to be ordered. We specify an ordering on the points of the spanning tree which does not affect the problem at all.

```
procedure Planarize(bel,posnbr,z); integer z;
```

```
    integer array bel,posnbr;
```

```
comment This procedure obtains the r-tree in the bel array  
and transforms it into a p-tree given by the arrays bel  
and pos nbr . ;
```

```
begin integer j; integer array carry[0:z];
```

```
    for j:=0 step 1 until z do carry[j]:=0;
```

```
    for j:=1 step 1 until z do
```

```
        begin posnbr[j]:=carry[bel[j]];
```

```
            carry[bel[j]]:=j; end;
```

```
for j:=1 step 1 until z do
    if bel[j]=0 then bel[j]:=j;
end Planarize;

procedure Convrd(bel, posnbr, z, rd);    value z;
    integer z; integer array bel, posnbr, rd;
comment this converts the (bel, posnbr) representation of
    the e-tree into the rd representation. ;
begin integer j, root;
    for j:=1 step 1 until z do
        if bel[j]=j then root:=j;
    for j:=1 step 1 until z do
        rd[j]:= if posnbr[j]≠0 then posnbr[j] else
            if j=root then j else -bel[j];
end Convrd ;

procedure Convlv(bel, posnbr, z, lv);    value z, bel, posnbr;
    integer z; integer array bel, posnbr, lv;
comment this converts the (bel, posnbr) representation of
    the e-tree into the lv representation ( again losing the
    ordering or planar property of the original e-tree ). ;
begin integer j, root; integer array nab, nsuc[1:z];
    Na(bel, posnbr, z, nab);          Refl(bel, posnbr, z);
    Succes(bel, posnbr, z, nsuc);
```

```
for j:=1 step 1 until z do if bel[j]=j then root:=j;
for j:=1 step 1 until z do
lu[j]:= if nab[j]≠0 then nab[j]
else if nsuc[j]=root then j else -bel[nsuc[j]];
end Convlu;
```

```
procedure Na(bel, posnbr, z, nab); integer z;
integer array bel, posnbr, nab;
comment this procedure finds the most negative or left
above for every point j, placing the value in nab[j].
(In fact nab[j] is equivalent to above(j) for the  $v_j$ 
of the  $\epsilon$ -tree.) If the point has no negative above, i.e.
is an end point then nab is put equal to zero. ;
```

```
begin integer j, k, l;
for l:=1 step 1 until z do
begin nab[l]:=0;
for k:=1 step 1 until z do
if (bel[k]=1) and (k≠1) then
begin for j:=2, j+1 while z>j do
if posnbr[j]=k then
begin k:=j; j:=1; end;
nab[l]:=k; goto Na1;
end;
Na1: end;
end Na ;
```

```
procedure   Refl(bel,posnbr,z);   integer z;
           integer array   bel,posnbr;
comment   this computes the reflected tree of (bel,posnbr)
placing the new  $\varphi$ -tree in the same arrays bel,posnbr. The
reflected  $\varphi$ -tree of a given  $\varphi$ -tree is the one which has the
same belows but has opposite sign convention. That is the
positive neighbours of the original  $\varphi$ -tree become negative
neighbours in the new one. ;
begin integer j,k;   integer array rn[1:z];
    for j:=1 step 1 until z do rn[j]:=0;
    for j:=1 step 1 until z do
        for k:=1 step 1 until z do
            if k=posnbr[j] then rn[k]:=-j;
    for j:=1 step 1 until z do posnbr[j]:=-rn[j];
end Refl;
```

```
procedure   Succes(bel,posnbr,z,suc); integer z;
           integer array bel,posnbr,suc;
comment   this computes the positive successor of each
point placing the values in suc[i] for i=1...z. ;
begin integer j,k;
for j:=1 step 1 until z do suc[j]:=0;
for j:=1 step 1 until z do
    if bel[j]=j then
```

```
begin  suc[j]:=j;  
      for k:=1 step 1 until z do  
          suc[k]:=su(bel,posnbr,suc,k);  
end  
end Succes;  
  
integer procedure  su(bel,posnbr,suc,a);  value a;  
      integer a;  integer array  bel,posnbr,suc;  
comment  this evaluates the positive successor of a point  
a recursively. On coming out of this procedure any inter-  
mediate successors that have been computed are retained  
and assigned to the corresponding identifiers suc[i] ;  
if suc[a]≠0 then su:=suc[a] else  
if nbr[a]≠0 then su:=nbr[a] else  
su:=suc[a]:=su(bel,posnbr,suc, bel[a]);
```

APPENDIX 2.

-----

App.2.1 Toptree Program.

We define three further procedures to be used in the Toptree program for the Travelling Salesman Problem. One is called Free ends which when applied to a  $\rho$ -tree, inserts in an array ends[1:z] the labels of all the end points of that  $\rho$ -tree. This procedure is used when  $T_k$  has been divided into two parts or subtrees by the deletion of a line. We find the best line with which to join the two parts by means of the procedure Join pts. The procedure branches count is used to find the degree of a point.

```
procedure Free ends(rd,lu,ends,root,z,k);  
integer root,z,k; integer array rd,lu,ends;  
begin integer j,c; boolean first;  
    first:=true;  
    for j:=1,j+1 while ends[j-1]≠0 do  
    begin k:=j;  
        for c:=0, if c≠0 then c else topleft(root,lu)  
        while lu[c]>0 and lu[c]≠c do  
            c:=ends[j]:=process(rd,lu,first,root);  
    end;
```

```
if rd[lu[root]]=-root then ends[k]:= root  
    else k:=k-1;  
end Free ends ;
```

```
procedure Join pts(cost,ends1,n1,below cut,ends2,n2,  
above cut,a,b,dist); integer n1,n2,a,b,dist,above cut,  
below cut; integer array cost,ends1,ends2;  
begin integer j,k;  
    dist:=10;  
    for j:=1 step 1 until n1 do  
        for k:=1 step 1 until n2 do  
            if (cost[ends1[j],ends2[k]]<dist) and  
                (below cut $\neq$ ends1[j] or above cut $\neq$ ends2[k])  
            then begin a:=ends1[j];  
                    b:=ends2[k];  
                    dist:=cost[a,b];  
            end;  
end; Join pts;
```

```
integer procedure br count(j,rd,lu); value j;  
integer j; integer array rd,lu;  
comment This evaluated  $d(v_j)$ , the degree of the point j.  
In other words branches count takes on the value of the num-  
ber of lines incident to the point j. ;
```

```
begin   integer l;  
    l:=0;  
    if  lu[j]>0 and lu[j]≠j then  
        for j:=lu[j],rd[j] while j>0 do  l:=l+1;  
    br count:=l+1;  
end br count;
```

There is one more point to note. The program will always test if the root of  $T_k$  is an end point. If not, it assigns an end point of  $T_k$  as the root point. This is to ensure that all multi-membered packages of  $T_k$  are also multi-membered stars. The test is first made when mintree is input (i.e.  $T_k = T_m$ ) and thereafter, every time the  $\epsilon$ -tree  $T_k$  is divided into two parts and rejoined together. The program, apart from the previously mentioned procedures, follows next. The section of program up to the label L0 is concerned with the input of data. The label PROCESS deals with the division and rejoining of  $T_k$ . PRINT is concerned with output of better solutions as they are found. The procedures Time and time are given in App. 3.1 as they were written for the programs in that section. The rest of the program is concerned with data manipulation.

```
begin   library AO,A6;   integer z,count,data nr;
pen(20);  open(30);
write text(30,[[pccc]DHCL21/TOPTREE***1[ccc]]);
data nr:=read(20);
START:   z:=read(20);
begin   integer j,k,a,b,dist,nr1,nr2,root,above cut,
        below cut,pt,n,pa,neg,rem,total,min total;
        integer array cost[1:z,1:z],rdd,luu,ends1,ends2,
        s,rt,cut,distance[1:z],up,p[0:z],lu,rd[1:z,1:z];

        ( All the necessary procedures are declared here,
        i.e. all the ones in App. 1.1 up to Newtree and
        Join pts, Free ends, branches, Time and time. )

for j:=2 step 1 until z do
for k:=1 step 1 until j-1 do
    cost[j,k]:=cost[k,j]:=read(20);
total:=read(20);
writetext(30,[[8c]MIN***TREE***TOTAL***]);
write(30,format([nddd]),total);
for j:=1 step 1 until z do
begin   rdd[j]:=read(20);
        luu[j]:=read(20); end;
root:=read(20);
```

```
if rdd[luu[root]] $\neq$  -root then  
  begin    rem:=topleft(root,luu);  
          Newtree(rem,root,rdd,luu);  
          root:=rem;    end;  
emit:=read(20);    Time(emit,L0,L0);    timer:=0;  
write text(30,[[cccc]COUNT*****TOTAL*****  
  *****ROUTE[ccc]]); count:=n:=0; min total:=10;  
  
L0:  pt:=root;  
  
L1:  pt:=luu[pt];  
  
L2:  if rdd[luu[pt]] $\neq$ -pt then else  
      if luu[luu[pt]]=luu[pt] then goto PRINT  
      else goto L1;  
  
n:=n+1;    pa:=0;  
for j:=luu[pt],rdd[j] while j>0 do    pa:=pa+1;  
up[n]:=1;    p[n]:=pa;  
for j:=1 step 1 until z do  
begin    rd[n,j]:=rdd[j];  
        lu[n,j]:=luu[j]; end;  
s[n]:=pt;    rt[n]:=root;    cut[n]:=luu[pt];  
distance[n]:=total;    below cut:=pt;    above cut:=luu[pt];  
neg:=cost[below cut,above cut];
```

PROCESS:

Time(0,FIN,FINISH);

Tree cut(above cut,below cut,rdd,luu);

Free ends(rdd,luu,ends1,root,z,nr1);

Free ends(rdd,luu,ends2,above cut,z,nr2);

Joinpts(cost,ends1,nr1,belowcut,ends2,nr2,abovcut,a,b,dist);

Newtree(b,above cut,rdd,luu);

Fixtop(b,a,rdd,luu);

total:=total+dist-neg;

if rdd[luu[root]] $\neq$ -root then

begin rem:=topleft(root,luu);

Newtree(rem,root,rdd,luu);

pt:=root:=rem;

end;

goto L2;

PRINT:

count:=count+1;

total:=total+cost[root,topleft(root,luu)];

if total<min total then

begin write text(30,[[c]]);

min total:= total;

write(30,format([ndddd]),count);

write(30,format([4sndddd]),total);

write text(30,[[6s]]);

```
    for j:= root,luu[k] while j≠k do
      begin    k:=j;
        write(30,format([nddd]),j);
      end;
end;

L3:  if n=0 then goto FINISH;
if up[n]>p[n] then
begin  n:=n-1;
  if n<0 then goto FINISH else goto L3;
end
else
begin  for j:=1 step 1 until z do
  begin  rdd[j]:=rd[n,j];
    luu[j]:=lu[n,j]; end;
  root:=rt[n]; pt:=s[n];
  if rdd[cut[n]]<0 then
  begin  above cut:=s[n];
    pt:=below cut:=belnext(rdd,s[n]);
  end
  else begin  below cut:=s[n];
    cut[n]:=above cut:=rdd[cut[n]];
  end;
  up[n]:=up[n]+1;
  neg:=cost[below cut,above cut];
```

```
total:=distance[n];  
goto PROCESS;  
end;  
  
FIN:   emit:=read(20);   Time(emit,LO,LO);  
timer:=timer+time;  
writetext(30,[[ccc]TIME**TAKEN**SO**FAR*---]);  
write(30,format([nddd.d]),timer/60);  
writetext(30,[[**MINUTES.]);  
writetext(30,[[cc]COUNT**SO**FAR**--]);  
write(30,format([ndddd]),count);  
end;  
  
FINISH: write text(30,[[cccc]END***OF***PROGRAM[10s]]);  
writetext(30,[TOTAL**TIME**TAKEN**IN**MINS**--]);  
write(30,format([nddd.d]),timer/60);  
write text(30,[TOTAL**COUNT***--]);  
write(30,format([ndddd]),count);  
data nr:=data nr-1;  
if data nr = 0 then   else goto START;  
close(30); close(20);  
end→
```

The maximum storage used is of the order  $3 \times z^2 + 10 \times z$  . If we know the number of lines which lie in multi-membered packages of mintree , we can reduce the storage declaration . Suppose there are  $n$  lines which lie within multi-membered packages (i.e.  $n = (z - 1) - (\text{number of one-membered packages})$  ). Then the number of arrays rdd and luu can be reduced from  $z$  to  $n$ . The storage required is of the order  $(z^2 + 10 \times z + 2 \times z \times n)$  where  $n < z$  . In a large number of cases  $n$  is half  $z$  giving us a storage limit of the order  $2 \times z^2 + 10 \times z$  .

App. 2.2 Data for Input.

The data for input has to be in the following format :-

```
data nr ;          This is the number of blocks of
                    data to follow.

z ;               A block of data starts from here
                  and z is the number of points in it.

c11 ;
c31 ; c32 ;       Now follows the lower triangle of
. . . . .         the cost matrix.
c21 ; c22 ; ... ; czz ;

total ;          Cost of mintree .

rd[1] ; lu[1] ;
rd[2] ; lu[2] ;   This is the rd, lu representation
. . . . .         of mintree.
rd[z] ; lu[z] ;

root ;           ( of mintree )
                  if it is unknown just insert 1.

interrupt duration; This is the time in seconds for the
                    procedure Time and also indicates
                    the end of a block of data.
```

→→→

### App. 2.3 Random Data Preparation and Mintree.

A short program, called Steering Program, was written which prepared random data and processed it into a form suitable for input into Toptree. As mentioned in Chpt. 3.7, the  $z$  points are scattered at random onto a rectangle with sides of length 99 units. The distances between all pairs of points is calculated and inserted into the cost matrix. The second part of the program applied the procedure Min tree to the resulting cost matrix and described it in the below representation. This was manipulated by the third part of the program, so as to obtain the tree in the rd,lu representation. All relevant information is output on paper tape in a suitable format for re-input into Toptree. The procedure Mintree as published in BCB by the author is named here Min tree 1.

```
begin   integer z;  
library 1;   open(30); open(20);   open(10);  
L: write text(30,[[p]DHCL21*****STEERING***PROGRAM[cccc]]);  
z:=read(20);   write(10,format([nddd;c]),z);  
begin   integer j,k,total;   integer array   cost[1:z,1:z],  
        below[0:z],link to,link from,rd,lu,x,y[1:z];  
( The following procedures are now declared: Planarize,  
    Convlu,Convrd, Refl, Na, su, Success and random )
```

```
procedure Min tree1(cost,z,below,total);  
integer z,total; integer array cost,below;  
begin integer m,n,a,b,s,count;  
integer procedure root(a); value a; integer a;  
    root:= if below[a]=0 then a else root(below[a]);  
procedure change(a,b); value a,b; integer a,b;  
begin integer m;  
    for m:= if a=0 then b else below[a] while a≠0 do  
        begin below[a]:=b; b:=a; a:=m; end;  
end change;  
  
    for m:=1 step 1 until z do below[m]:=0;  
    count:=total:=0;  
A: s:=∞;  
    for m:=2 step 1 until z do  
        for n:=1 step 1 until m-1 do  
            if cost[m,n]<s then  
                begin s:=cost[m,n]; a:=m; b:=n; end;  
            if root(a)≠root(b) then  
                begin count:=count+1; change(a,b);  
                    total:=total+s;  
                    if count=z-1 then goto FINISH;  
                end;  
            cost[a,b]:=∞; goto A;  
FINISH: end Min tree1;
```

```
j:=random(1,100,read(20));  
for j:=1 step 1 until z do  
begin   x[j]:=random(1,100,0);  
        write(30,format([8snddd]),x[j]);  
        y[j]:=random(1,100,0);  
        write(30,format([ndddd]),y[j]);  
        if j=5 or j=10 or j=15 then write text(30,[[c]]);  
end;  
write text(30,[[6c]]);  
for j:=2 step 1 until z do  
begin   write text(30,[[c]]); write text(10,[[c]]);  
        for k:=1 step 1 until j-1 do  
        begin   cost[j,k]:=cost[k,j]:=  
                sqrt((x[j]-x[k])2+(y[j]-y[k])2);  
                write(30,format([ndddd]),cost[j,k]);  
                write(10,format([ndddd;]),cost[j,k]);  
        end;  
end;  
Min tree1(cost,z,below,total);  
write text(30,[[6c]LINKS***OF**THE**TREE[ccc]]);  
for j:=1 step 1 until z do  
begin   write(30,format([nddddd]),j);  
        write(30,format([4sndddc]),below[j]);  
end;
```

```
write text(30,[[ccc]TOTAL**--]);
write text(10,[[cccc]]);
write(30,format([nddddc]),total);
write(10,format([ndddd;cc]),total);
begin   integer array   nbr[1:z];
        Planarize(below,nbr,z);
        Convlv(below,nbr,z,lu);
        Convrld(below,nbr,z,rd);
        for j:=1 step 1 until z do
        begin   write(10,format([-nddddd;]),rd[j]);
                write(10,format([5s-nddd;c]),lu[j]);
        end;
        charout(10,61);    gap(10,50);
        for j:=1 step 1 until z do
        if rd[j]=j then write(10,format([ndd;c]),j);
        charout(10,61);
end;
end;   close(30);   close(20);   close(10);
end→
```

The data for input is as follows: z (the number of points); random (an eleven digit random number to start the random number geerator); →

App. 2.4 Dynamic Programming Program.

This is the dynamic programming program mentioned in Chpt. 3.6 . The data format ready for input is as follows :

data nr ;	Number of blocks of data.
z ;	Number of points in graph.
$c_{11}$ ;	} Lower triangle of the cost matrix.
$c_{12}$ ; $c_{21}$ ;	
. . . . .	
$c_{21}$ ; $c_{22}$ ; ... ; $c_{2z-1}$ ;	

→

The complete program is as follows.

```
begin   integer n,count;
integer procedure fact(n); value n; integer n;
begin   integer j,k; k:=1;
        for j:=1 step 1 until n do k:=k×j;
        fact:=k;
end   fact;

integer procedure C(n,m); value n,m; integer n,m;
        C:=fact(n)+(fact(n-m)×fact(m));
```

```
library 1;  open(20);;  open(30);;

write text(30,[[pcc]DHCL021[16s]DYNAMIC***PROGRAMMING[c]
[14s]FOR***THE***TRAVELLING***SALESMAN***PROBLEM[cccccc]]);
count:=read(20);

START : n:=read(20);  write text(30,[[cccc]]);

begin  integer  j,k,l,m,v,w,order,tally,note,rem,charge,top;
      integer array  cost[1:n,1:n],route,vector[1:n],
      total[1:2,1:(n-1)xC(n-2,(n-2)+2)],
      perm[1:4,1:(n-1)xC(n-2,(n-2)+2)];

procedure  Sequence(produce,n,m,vector,order);  value  n,m;
integer  n,m,order;  integer array  vector;  boolean produce;
begin  integer  s,j,t,ordersub,z;
      integer procedure  sum(s,p,k,bool);  value  s,p,k,bool;
      integer s,p,k;  boolean bool;
      begin  integer total,l;
        total:=0;  if p=m-1  then  total:= k
        else  if  k $\neq$ 0  then
          begin  for l:= if bool then s else k
            step -1  until  if bool then s-k+1 else 1 do
              total:=total+sum(s,p+1,l,false);
          end;
        sum:= total;
      end sum;
```

```
if produce then  
begin    ordersub:=order;    vector[1]:=1;    s:=n-m+2;  
    for j:=2 step 1 until m-1 do  
        begin    vector[j]:=0;  
            for t:= s, t-1 while vector[j]=0 do  
                begin    z:= sum(s,j,t,true)×(n-m+1);  
                    if ordersub > z then  
                        begin    vector[j]:= vector[j-1] + t + 1;  
                            ordersub:=ordersub - z;  
                            s:=s-t;  
                        end;  
                    end;  
                end;  
            end;  
        end;  
    vector[m]:=50;  
    for j:=2,j+1 while vector[m]=50 do  
        if vector[j]-vector[j-1]>1 then  
            begin    z:=vector[j] - vector[j-1];  
                if z > ordersub then  
                    vector[m]:=ordersub + vector[j-1]  
                else ordersub:=ordersub - z+1;  
            end;  
        end;  
    end else  
    begin    order:=0;    t:=1;    s:=n-m+2;  
        forj:=2 step 1 until m-1 do
```

```
begin    z:=vector[j] - vector[j-1] -1;
        order:= order + sum(s,j,z,true)×(n-m+1);
        if vector[m]>vector[j] then t:=t+1;
        s:=s-z;
end;
order:=order + vector[m] - t;
end;
end Sequence;

procedure Permutate;
begin    integer rem;
        if m ≤ 6 then perm[v,order]:=perm[w,tally] ×
            100 + vector[m] else
        begin    rem:=perm[w,tally] + 100000 00000;
            perm[v,order]:=(perm[w,tally] -100000 00000× rem)
                × 100 + vector[m]; perm[v+2,order]:=
            perm[w+2,tally] × 100 + rem;
        end;
end Permutate;

for j:=2 step 1 until n do
    for k:=1 step 1 until j-1 do
        cost[j,k]:=cost[k,j]:=read(20);
    for j:=1 step 1 until (n-1)×C(n-2,(n-2)+2) do
        for k:=1 step 1 until 4 do perm[k,j]:=0;
```

```
v:=1;    w:=2;
for j:=2 step 1 until n do
begin    total[v,j-1]:=cost[1,j];
        perm[v,j-1]:=100+j; end;
for m:=3 step 1 until n do
begin    v:=if v=1 then 2 else 1;
        w:=3-v;    top:=(n-1)xC(n-2,m-2);
        for order:=1, order+1 while order ≤ top do
        begin    Sequence(true,n,m,vector,order);
            total[v,order]:= 1 00000 00000;
            for l:=2 step 1 until m-1 do
            begin    route[m-1]:=vector[l];    k:=1;
                for j:=k while k< l, k+1 while k< m-1 do
                begin    route[k]:=vector[j];
                    k:=k+1;    end;
                Sequence(false,n,m-1,route,tally);
                charge:=total[w,tally]+cost[vector[l],vector[m]];
                if charge < total[v,order] then
                begin    total[v,order]:=charge;
                    Permutate;    end;
            end;
        end;
    end;
end;
```

```
charge:= 1 00000 00000;  
for j:=1 step 1 until n-1 do  
if charge > total[v,j] + cost[n-j+1,1] then  
begin   charge:=total[v,j] + cost[n+1-j,1];  
        note:=j;  
end;  
write text(30,[[cc]TOTAL**---]);  
write(30,format([ndddddd],charge);  
write text(30,[[cc]ROUTE**---]);  
for j:=1 step 1 until n do  
begin   if j > 6 then v:=v+2;  
        rem:=(perm[v,note]+ 100) × 100;  
        route[j]:=perm[v,note] - rem;  
        write(30,format([ndddd],route[j]);  
        perm[v,note]:=perm[v,note] + 100;  
        if j> 6 then v:=v-2;  
end;  
count:=count-1;  
if count≠0 then goto START;  
end;   close(20);   close(30);  
end→
```

App. 2.5 Specimen Output.

This was the Toptree output for the (20 × 20) Croes Problem. The lower cost triangle is given below followed by the output on the next page.

29;  
41; 72; 22;  
9; 72; 70; 75; 62;  
18; 50; 54; 60; 28; 79; 91;  
6; 39; 35; 20; 17; 72; 97; 59; 87;  
42; 60; 59; 24; 74; 26; 64; 47; 75; 4; 31;  
48; 34; 88; 73; 93; 60; 97;  
74; 25; 19; 79; 0; 32; 65; 63;  
43; 46; 72; 51; 76; 63; 64; 27; 71;  
51; 25; 87; 43; 30; 84; 13; 42; 91; 66;  
7; 35; 38; 58; 55; 21; 23; 62; 5; 30; 9;  
36; 14; 24; 4; 84; 26; 3; 32; 85; 57; 26; 86;  
93; 20; 68; 47; 42; 96; 78; 20; 51; 8; 6; 27; 12;  
58; 35; 63; 29; 47; 75; 15; 26; 72; 71; 99; 34; 28; 19;  
11; 83; 80; 22; 91; 14; 30; 5; 53; 19; 33; 72; 24; 77;  
51; 27; 58; 48; 21; 13; 56; 80; 8; 25; 8; 45; 60; 14;  
61; 86; 40; 27; 59; 51; 22; 52; 49; 10; 99; 59; 19; 22;  
30; 95; 89; 88; 24; 16; 13; 47; 90; 83; 92; 32; 12; 54;  
44; 30; 24; 91; 80; 83; 58; 36; 39; 40; 31; 77; 20; 77;

DHCLO21/TOPTREE 1

MIN TREE TOTAL -- 154

COUNT	TOTAL	ROUTE									
1	347	19 6	5 4	9 1	3 12	20 2	18 13	10 7	14 15	11 8	17 16
2	286	12 17	19 6	5 4	9 1	3 16	20 8	18 15	10 7	14 13	11 2
5	278	2 20	8 18	16 10	15 14	7 11	13 17	19 6	5 4	9 1	3 12
8	277	8 14	16 10	15 18	7 20	12 3	1 9	4 5	6 19	17 13	11 2
135	269	2 18	13 10	4 14	15 11	7 17	19 6	5 12	9 1	3 16	20 8
141	260	8 10	16 14	15 11	7 17	19 6	5 12	9 1	3 4	20 13	18 2

END OF PROGRAM COUNT -- 1728

Count is the iteration number within which the improved solution was found. The count number after the words END OF PROGRAM indicates the number of solutions within  $S_m$  which the program analysed.

APPENDIX 3.

-----

The program for the bandwidth minimisation is basically in Algol but a little Usercode (KDF9 Machine language ) is used to facilitate the segmentation and the relabelling of magnetic tapes. The three segments of the program correspond to the three Stages ( described in Chpt. 4). At the finish of each segment , all data which is relevant to the next segment is written onto a magnetic tape ( initially zero but labelled AKPOXMBM the first time the program is called ). Due to the inadequacy of the KDF9 Algol compiler, the magnetic tape transfer procedures are slightly more complicated than they have to be , because all the integer arrays have to be transferred to real arrays and then copied to the magnetic tape. There are a few input and output procedures which are common to all three segments and they, with a few others, will be described now.

```
procedure Mag read 1(dv);  value dv;  integer dv;  
comment This is one of the first instructions to be obeyed  
during Segments 2 and 3 . This establishes the size of the  
various arrays to be declared and read from the magnetic  
tape (AKPOXMBM) . ;  
begin  readbinary(dv,mag,[A]);  
      datanr:=mag[1];      rm:=mag[2];
```

```
emit:=mag[3];      tt:=mag[4];
bd:=mag[5];        bounds:=mag[6];
ld:=mag[7];        z:=mag[8];
br:=mag[9];        b:=mag[10];
bstop:=mag[11];    ma:=mag[12];
mb:=mag[13];       mc:=mag[14];
```

end Mag read 1;

procedure next segment(v);    value v;    integer v;  
comment    This procedure is used to jump to the next  
segment. Thus the last instruction obeyed in Segment 1  
is this procedure with v set equal to 2. At the end of  
the next segment v is set equal to 3 and in the last  
one it is set back to 1 . ;

KDF9 3/0/0/0;

VO=B 20 36 36;

1; J2EN; ERASE; J1;

2; J3EJ; LINK; ERASE; J2;

3; E3; SHC+12; SHL+6; [v]; OR; SHL+12;

VO; OR; SHC+18; E2; SET1; OUT;

ALGOL; comment end of next segment;

procedure Mag read 2(dv);    value dv;    integer dv;

comment    Having established the size of the various arrays

by means of Mag read 1 we now read down the rest of the data by means of this procedure.;

```
begin   integer j,k,b,c;
        procedure arnext(array); integer array array;
        begin   if b=50 then readbinary(dv,mag,[A]);
                b:= if b=50 then 1 else b+1;
                array[k]:=mag[b]; end;

        for j:=1 step 1 until 3 do
        begin   b:=50;  c:= if j=1 then br else z;
                for k:=1 step 1 until c do
                        if j=1 then arnext(branches)
                        else if j=2 then arnext(rowstart)
                                else arnext(nrinrow);
                end;
end   Mag write2;
```

```
procedure Mag write(dv);  value dv;  integer dv;
comment One of the last few instructions to be obeyed
before the end of a segment is this procedure which
writes up onto the magnetic tape all the information
necessary to its functioning. This includes the branches,
rowstart and nrinrow array. ;
```

```
begin   integer j,k,b,c;
        procedure idnext(array); integer array array;
```

```
begin   b:= if b=50 then 1 else b+1;
        mag[b]:=array[k];
        if b=50 or k=c then writebinary(dv,mag,[A]);
end;
b:=0;      for j:=datanr,rm,emit,tt,bd,bounds,ld,z,
br,b,bstop,ma,mb,mc do
begin   b:=b+1; mag[b]:=j; end;
for j:=b+1 step 1 until 50 do mag[j]:=0;
writebinary(dv,mag,[A]);
for j:=1,2,3 do
begin   b:=0;   c:= if j=1 then br else z;
        for k:=1 step 1 until c do
            if j=1 then idnext(branches)
            else if j=2 then idnext(rowstart)
                else idnext(nrinrow);
        end;
end Mag write;

procedure Matrix Output 1(branches,rowstart,nrinrow,z,br,
density,b,bstop,dv); integer z,br,density,b,bstop,dv;
integer array branches,rowstart,nrinrow;
comment This procedure is used whenever it is required to
output any details of the graph. This is done usually at
the end of every segment. ;
```

```
begin   integer j,k;  
    if dv=30 then   writetext(30,[[c]**Z*****BR*****  
        DENSITY*****B*****B*STOP[cc]]);  
    write(dv,format([ndd;]),z);  
    write(dv,format([ndddddd;]),br+2);  
    write(dv,format([9snd;]),density);  
    write(dv,format([ndddddd;]),b);  
    write(dv,format([ndddddd;cc]),bstop);  
    if dv=30 then   writetext(30,[[cc]ROW***NR*IN*ROW*  
        *****MATRIX[c]]);  
    for j:=1 step 1 until z do  
    begin   newline(dv,if j-1=10X((j-1)+10) then 2 else 1);  
        if dv=30 then write(30,format([nd;]),j);  
        write(dv,format([ndddddd;]),nrinrow[j]);  
        writetext(dv,[[ssss]]);  
        for k:=0 step 1 until nrinrow[j]-1 do  
            write(dv,format([nddd;]),branches[rowstart[j]+k]);  
    end;  
end   Matrix Output 1;
```

```
procedure   Matrix Input(branches,rowstart,nr in row,z,br);  
integer z,br;   integer array   branches,rowstart,nr in row;  
comment   This is a standard input procedure used not only  
in this program but in others. It accepts the matrix in
```

the branches list form and the layout is as described in  
Chpt. 2.21 .;

```
begin   integer s,j,k;  
        s:=1;  
        for j:=1 step 1 until z do  
          begin   nr in row[j]:=read(20);  
                rowstart[j]:=s;  
                for k:=1 step 1 until nr in row[j] do  
                  begin   branches[s]:=read(20);  
                        s:=s+1;   end;  
                end;  
        end;  
end   Matrix input;
```

```
procedure Perm branches(branches,rowstart,nrinrow,S,br,z);  
integer br,z;  
integer array branches,rowstart,nrinrow,S;  
comment Given a matrix in the branches list representation  
and a permutation of  $L(z)$  in the array S , this proce-  
dure will permute the rows and columns of the matrix cor-  
respondingly (i.e. pre and post-multiply the equivalent ad-  
jacency matrix by the vector corresponding to the array S).;  
begin   integer j,s,k;   integer array copy branches[1:br],  
        inv S,inv rowstart,inv nrinrow[1:z];
```

```
for j:=1 step 1 until z do
  begin    inv S[S[j]]:=j;
           inv rowstart[j]:=rowstart[S[j]];
           inv nrinrow[j]:=nrinrow[S[j]];
  end;
for j:=1 step 1 until br do
  copybranches[j]:=inv S[branches[j]];
s:=1;
for j:=1 step 1 until z do
  begin    nrinrow[j]:=inv nrinrow[j];
           rowstart[j]:=s;
           for k:=inv rowstart[j] step 1 until
           inv rowstart[j]+nrinrow[j]-1 do
             begin    branches[s]:=copy branches[k];
                     s:=s+1;    end;
           end;
end;
end  Perm branches;

procedure Time(a,L1,L2); value a; integer a; label L1,L2;
comment This time control procedure is of great help in
circumstances where it is impossible to estimate how long
a program is going to take for some set of data. Into a
is inserted, when this procedure is called the first time,
the time interval (in seconds) between monitor typewriter
```

queries. To continue the program the reply is 0.→ . If it is required to jump to the label L1 then a reply of 1.→ is called for and similarly a reply of 2.→ makes the program jump to label L2 .;

KDF9 2/2/0/9;

V3=B 02 07 64 51 55 45 00 00;

V4=B 61 65 45 62 71 00 00 34;

V6=Q 0/AV3/AV5;

V7=B 37 75 00 00 00 00 00 20;

V8=B 02 00 00 41 47 41 51 56;

V9=Q 0/AV8/AV8;

[a]; SHA24; DUP; J1=Z; DUP; =V2; =V1; SET9; OUT; =V0; EXIT;

1; ERASE; SET9; OUT; V0; -; V2; -; J2>Z; EXIT;

2; V2; V1; +; =V2; V6; =Q15; V9; =Q14;

3; TWEQ15; V5; SHC6; V7; -; ZERO; J4≠;ERASE; EXIT;

4; SET1; J5≠; ERASE; J[L1];

5; SET2; -; J6=Z; TWQ14; VR; J3;

6; J[L2];

ALGOL;

integer procedure time;

comment The first time this procedure is called it notes the time on the 24 hour clock and it will take on the value of the total number of seconds which have elapsed since its

last call. ;

KDF9 3/0/0/0;

VO=0;

SET9; OUT; DUP; VO; CAB; =VO; -; SHA-24; EXIT;

ALGOL;

App. 3.1 Segment 1.

The first segment includes Stage 1, input procedures and a facility to generate random data. The main procedure is called `Ld comp` . This is a control procedure which is called once for each new set of data. By means of `Gr inspect`, it finds the next point to be removed from the graph (Chpt. 4.43) and accomplishes this by means of `Cut point` . The resultant graph is then rearranged ready for the next iteration by means of `Gr rearrange`, `Gr add` and `Gr subtract`. At the start of each iteration  $E(\text{resultant graph})$  is computed by means of `Ld calc` . The procedures used will now follow each having a brief comment to describe their workings.

```
procedure Ld calc(rem); integer rem;  
comment Given the graph in (bbranches, etc.) the procedure  
Min g roots finds the maximum path length and all  
pairs of points yielding this value . Next for each pair  
of these points, the procedure Loop count is entered to  
find the number of distinct paths between them. We thus  
have the values of all the variables in formula ( 4.4 A ) .  
The value of  $E(G')$  is inserted in the identifier rem. ;  
begin integer loop,j,k,sum,b,d,g,n,m;  
      integer array ends1,mod[1:zz+1],ends2[1:bounds];
```

```
Min g roots(bbranches, rrowstart, nnrinrow, zz, bbr, ends1,
ends2, mod, b, d, g);  loop:=-1;
for j:=1 step 1 until b do
    for k:=mod[j] step 1 until mod[j+1]-1 do
begin  Loop count(bbranches, rrowstart, nnrinrow, zz, bbr,
sum, ends1[j], ends2[k], n, m);  if sum>loop then loop:=sum;
end;
rem:=entier((zz+loop+m-2)/m);
end  Ld calc;

procedure  Min g roots(branches, rowstart, nrinrow, z, br, ends1,
ends2, mod, b, d, g); integer z, br, g, b, d;  integer array branches,
rowstart, nrinrow, ends1, ends2, mod;
comment  This uses the mushrooming r-tree technique as des-
cribed in Chpt. 4.41. in order to find the root and highest
point of all the mushrooming r-trees with maximum height.
These two sets of points are stored in the integer arrays
ends1 and ends2 . ;
begin  integer gee, a, s, olds, nr, c, j, k, root;
    integer array gen, list[1:z];
    for j:=1 step 1 until z do  ends1[j]:=ends2[j]:=0;
    g:=0;    d:=nr:=b:=0;
    for root:=1 step 1 until z do
    begin  for j:=1 step 1 until z do gen[j]:=0;
```

```
a:=s:=1; olds:=gee:=0; list[a]:=root; gen[root]:=1;
A:  for j:=olds+1,j+1 while j<s do
      for k:=rowstart[list[j]] step 1 until
        rowstart[list[j]]+nrinrow[list[j]]-1 do
          if gen[branches[k]]=0 then
begin  c:=branches[k];  gen[c]:=gen[list[j]]+1;
        a:=a+1;    list[a]:=c;
        if gee<gen[c] then gee:=gen[c];  end;
      olds:=s;  s:=a; if a $\neq$ z then goto A else
      if gee<g then goto FINISH;
      if g<gee then d:=b:=0; b:=b+1; g:=gee;
      ends1[b]:=root; mod[b]:=d+1;
      for j:=olds+1 step 1 until s do
        begin  d:=d+1;
          if d>bounds then  begin  writetext(30,[[4c]NON-
CATASTROPHIC**FAILURE**DUE**TO**VALUE**OF**BOUNDS**BEING**TOO
**SMALL**---**RESULTING**PROGRAM**THUS**INCOMPLETE]);
d:=mod[b]-1; b:=b-1;  goto FINISH;  end;
          ends2[d]:=list[j];
        end;
      end;
FINISH:
  end;
  mod[b+1]:=d+1; g:=g-1;
end  Min g roots;
```

```

procedure Loop count(branches,rowstart,nrinrow,z,br,loop,
endpt1,endpt2,n,m); integer z,br,loop,end pt1,end pt2,n,m;
comment This procedure is given two points of the graph
and builds a spanning or mushrooming r-tree from each point
one generation at a time. The process stops as soon as the
two rooted trees come into contact. A note is made of the
number of common points and from this is deduced the num-
ber of distinct paths between the two respective roots. ;
integer array branches,nrinrow,rowstart;
begin integer j,k,a,b,s,t,old s,old t;
    integer array delete[1:z],path[-z:z],list[1:2,1:z];
    n:=2;          s:=t:=1;          old s:=old t:=m:=path[0]:=0;
    loop:=-1; a:=b:=1; list[1,1]:=endpt1; list[2,1]:=endpt2;
    for j:=1 step 1 until z do begin path[j]:=j;
                                                path[-j]:=-j;
                                                delete[j]:=0; end;
    delete[endpt1]:=z; delete[endpt2]:=-z;
A:   for j:=old s+1,j+1 while j<=s do
        for k:=rowstart[list[1,j]] step 1 until
            rowstart[list[1,j]]+nrinrow[list[1,j]]-1 do
            if delete[branches[k]]<0 and path[delete[branches[k]]]≠0
                and path[delete[list[1,j]]]≠0 then
                begin loop:=loop+1; path[delete[branches[k]]]:=
                    path[delete[list[1,j]]]:=0; end

```

```
else if delete[branches[k]]=0 or delete[branches[k]]=-z
then begin delete[branches[k]]:=if j=1 then a else
                delete[list[1,j]]; a:=a+1;
                list[1,a]:=branches[k]; end;
old s:=s; s:=a; m:=m+1; n:=n+s-old s;
if loop>0 then goto FINISH;
for j:=old t+1,j+1 while j<=t do
    for k:=rowstart[list[2,j]] step 1 until
        rowstart[list[2,j]]+nrinrow[list[2,j]]-1 do
if delete[branches[k]]>0 and path[delete[branches[k]]]≠0
    and (path[delete[list[2,j]]]≠0 or j=1) then
    begin loop:=loop+1; path[delete[branches[k]]]:=
        path[delete[list[2,j]]]:=0; end
else if delete[branches[k]]=0 then
    begin delete[branches[k]]:=if j=1 then -b else
        delete[list[2,j]]; b:=b+1;
        list[2,b]:=branches[k]; end;
old t:=t; t:=b; m:=m+1; n:=n+t-old t;
if loop<0 then goto A;
FINISH: n:=n-(s-olds)-(t-oldt)+loop+1;
end Loop count;
```

```
procedure Gr inspect(rem); integer rem;

comment The theory of Chpt. 4.43 is used and rem will
contain the label of that point v which has  $p(m,j) \leq p(m,i)$ 
for all i. Before the matrix P is computed, the procedure
Min g2 roots is entered in order to find the maxmin path
length m . ;

begin integer s,t,j,sum,a;
  Min g2 roots(a);
  begin integer array matrix[1:a,1:zz];
    for s:=1 step 1 until a do
      for t:=1 step 1 until zz do
        begin sum:=0; for j:=rrowstart[t] step 1 until
          rrowstart[t]+nnrinrow[t]-1 do sum:=
            sum+(if s $\neq$ 1 then matrix[s-1,bbranches[j]] else 1);
          matrix[s,t]:=sum;
        end;
      sum:=10;
    for j:=zz step -1 until 1 do
      if matrix[a,j]<sum then
        begin sum:=matrix[a,j];
          rem:=j; end;
    end;
end Gr inspect;
```

```
procedure Min g2 roots(g); integer g;
comment this uses the mushrooming r-tree technique in
order to compute m ,the heighth of the tallest or highest
mushrooming rtree and hence the maxmin path length. ;
begin integer root,a,j,k,c,s,olds,gee;
      integer array gen,list[1:zz];
      g:=0;
      for root:=1 step 1 until zz do
      begin for j:=1 step 1 until zz do gen[j]:=0;
          a:=s:=gen[root]:=1;
          olds:=gee:=0;
          list[a]:=root;
          A: for j:=olds+1,j+1 while j<s do
              for k:=rrowstart[list[j]] step 1 until
                  rrowstart[list[j]]+nnrinrow[list[j]]-1 do
                  if gen[bbranches[k]]=0 then
                      begin c:=bbranches[k]; gen[c]:=gen[list[j]]+1;
                          a:=a+1; list[a]:=c;
                          if gee<gen[c] then gee:=gen[c]; end;
                      olds:=s; s:=a; if a≠zz then goto A;
                      if gee>g then g:=gee;
                      end;
          g:=g-1;
      end Min g2 roots ;
```

```
procedure  sort(a,n);  integer n;  integer array a;  
comment  A simple sorting procedure used by Cut point. ;  
begin  integer b,i,j;  
        i:=0;  
L:    i:=i+1;  j:=n;  if i=n then goto SF;  
M:    if j=i then goto L;    j:=j-1;  
        if a[j]<a[j+1] then begin    b:=a[j+1]; a[j+1]:=a[j];  
                                    a[j]:=b; end;  
        goto M;  
SF: end  sort;
```

```
procedure  Cut point(a,can,bool,branches,rowstart,nrinrow,  
z,br);  value a;  integer a,z,br;  integer array  can,branches,  
rowstart,nrinrow;  boolean bool;  
comment  Having decided which point to eliminate from the graph  
by means of the procedure Gr inspect , this is now affected.  
The fact that the resulting graph may become disconnected is  
not taken into account. The graph also has to be relabelled  
in order that the remaining graph will be labelled consecu-  
tively from one upwards. ;  
begin  integer j,k,b,c,d,r,n,l;  integer array S,nig[1:z];  
        d:=a;  r:=1;  nig[r]:=n:=if bool then a else abs(can[d]);  
        if n>z then goto CPF;  
        for j:=0 step 1 until nrinrow[n]-1 do
```

```

    if nrinrow[branches[rowstart[n]+j]]=1 then
begin   r:=r+1;  nig[r]:=branches[rowstart[n]+j];
        sort(nig,r);  end;
c:=r;  r:=-1;
CP2: r:=r+1;  if r=c then goto CP1;  a:=nig[r+1];
if a≠n then  b:=z-r-1 else begin  b:=z;  l:=0;  end;
if a=b then goto CP2;
for j:=1 step 1 until a-1,a+1 step 1 until b-1,b+1 step
1 until z do  S[j]:=j;  S[a]:=b;  S[b]:=a;
if not bool then for j:=1 step 1 until z-1 do
    if sign(can[j])=sign(can[d]) and abs(can[j])=a then
        can[j]:=sign(can[j])×b;
Perm branches(branches,rowstart,nrinrow,S,br,z);
goto CP2;
CP1: n:=nrinrow[z];
for j:=rowstart[z] step 1 until br do
begin   for k:=rowstart[branches[j]] step 1 until
        rowstart[branches[j]+1]-1 do if branches[k]=z then
            for l:=k step 1 until rowstart[z]-2 do
                branches[l]:=branches[l+1];
C:   nrinrow[branches[j]]:=nrinrow[branches[j]]-1;
    for l:=branches[j]+1 step 1 until z-1 do
        rowstart[l]:=rowstart[l]-1;
end;
```

z:=z-c; br:=br-2xn;

CPF: end Cut point;

procedure Gr rearrange(a); integer a;

comment This procedure tests by means of Gr cont if the graph is still connected. If it is not it takes certain steps, by means of Gr separate, so that the program does not later fail catastrophically. ;

begin integer j,cz1,cbr1,cz2,cbr2,na,nb,zzz,bbbr;

integer array can[1:z];

procedure Gr separate;

comment If the graph is disconnected, this procedure will relabel the graph so that the points in each component are consecutively labelled. ;

begin integer j; integer array branches2[1:bbbr],

nrinrow2,rowstart2[1:zzz];

for j:=1 step 1 until zzz do

begin rowstart2[j]:=rrowstart[j];

nrinrow2[j]:=nrinrow[j]; end;

for j:=1 step 1 until bbbr do branches2[j]:=bbranches[j];

cz2:=cz1:=zzz; cbr1:=cbr2:=bbbr;

for j:=zzz step -1 until 1 do

```
if can[j]>0 then   Cutpoint(j,can,false,bbranches,  
rrowstart,nnrinrow,cz1,cbr1) else   Cutpoint(j,can,  
false,branches2,rowstart2,nrinrow2,cz2,cbr2);  
for j:=1 step 1 until bbbr-cbr1 do  
  bbranches[cbr1+j]:=branches2[j]+cz1;  
for j:=1 step 1 until zzz-cz1 do  
  begin   rrowstart[cz1+j]:=rowstart2[j]+cbr1;  
          nnrinrow[cz1+j]:=nrinrow2[j]; end;  
end Gr seperate;
```

boolean procedure gr cont;

comment By means of mushrooming a quick check is made to see if the graph is connected. The root of the mushrooming r-tree is  $v_1$ . If the mushrooming r-tree does not contain all the points of the graph then bool is set false to indicate disconnectedness otherwise bool is set true. ;

```
begin   integer j,k,a,s,olds,c;   boolean bool;  
       integer array gen,list[1:zzz];  
       bool:=true;   for j:=1 step 1 until zzz do  
       begin   can[j]:=-j;   gen[j]:=0; end;  
       gen[1]:=a:=s:=1;   olds:=0;   list[a]:=1;  
       A:   for j:=olds+1,j+1 while j≤s do  
           for k:=rrowstart[list[j]] step 1 until  
               rrowstart[list[j]]+nnrinrow[list[j]]-1 do
```

```
    if gen[bbranches[k]]=0 then  
begin   c:=bbranches[k];  gen[c]:=gen[list[j]]+1;  
        a:=a+1;   list[a]:=c; end;  
olds:=s;  s:=a;  if olds≠s and a≠zzz then goto A;  
if olds=s then  
  begin   bool:=false;  for j:=1 step 1 until s do  
        can[list[j]]:=list[j]; end;  
  gr cont:=bool;  
end  gr cont;  
  
  for j:=1 step 1 until zz do  copycut[j]:=copybr[j]:=0;  
  zzz:=zz;  bbbbr:=bbr;  na:=nb:=0;  a:=1;  
GR1:  if gr cont then goto GRF;  Gr seperate;  
  a:=a+1;  na:=na+cz2;  nb:=nb+cbr2;  
  zzz:=copycut[a]:=cz2;  
  bbbbr:=copybr[a]:=cbr2;  goto GR1;  
GRF:  copycut[1]:=zz-na;  copybr[1]:=bbr-nb;  a:=a-1;  
end Gr rearrange;
```

The following two procedures are simply graph manipulative routines in order to prepare the graph for re-entry into the Ld calc iterative loop.

```
procedure  Gr add(a);  value a;  integer a;  
begin   integer j;
```

```
for j:=1 step 1 until br-cutbr[cp-1] do  
    branches[cutbr[cp-1]+j]:=bbranches[j]+cutpt[cp-1];  
for j:=1 step 1 until z-cutpt[cp-1] do  
begin rowstart[cutpt[cp-1]+j]:=rrowstart[j]+cutbr[cp-1];  
    nrinrow[cutpt[cp-1]+j]:=nnrinrow[j]; end;  
for j:=1 step 1 until a do  
begin cutpt[cp-1+j]:=cutpt[cp-2+j]+copycut[j];  
    cutbr[cp-1+j]:=cutbr[cp-2+j]+copybr[j];  
end;  
cp:=cp+a; cutpt[cp]:=z; cutbr[cp]:=br;  
end Gr add;
```

procedure Gr subtract;

```
begin integer j;  
    for j:=1 step 1 until z do  
    begin nnrinrow[j]:=nrinrow[j];  
        rrowstart[j]:=rowstart[j]; end;  
    for j:=1 step 1 until br do bbranches[j]:=branches[j];  
    for j:=1 step 1 until z-zz do  
    begin rowstart[j]:=rrowstart[j+zz]-bbr;  
        nrinrow[j]:=nnrinrow[j+zz]; end;  
    for j:=1 step 1 until br-bbr do  
        branches[j]:=bbranches[j+bbr]-zz;
```

```
for j:=1 step 1 until cp-1 do  
begin   cutpt[j]:=cutpt[j+1]-zz;  
        cutbr[j]:=cutbr[j+1]-bbr;   end;  
cutpt[cp]:=z;   cutbr[cp]:=br;   Gr add(0);  
end   Gr subtract;
```

```
procedure Ld comp(branches,rowstart,nrinrow,z,br,ld,bounds);  
value branches,rowstart,nrinrow,z,br;   integer z,br,ld,bounds;  
integer array branches,rowstart,nrinrow;  
comment All the previous procedures just described within  
this sub-appendix are declared within this the main control  
procedure. ;  
begin integer rem,zz,bbr,j,a,cp,point;   integer array copycut,  
copybr,nnrinrow,rrowstart[1:z],cutbr,cutpt[0:z],bbranches[1:br];  
      ( procedures dwclared here )
```

```
for j:=1 step 1 until z do   cutpt[j]:=cutbr[j]:=0;  
zz:=cutpt[1]:=z;   bbr:=cutbr[1]:=br;  
ld:=cutpt[0]:=cutbr[0]:=0;   cp:=1;  
for j:=1 step 1 until br do bbranches[j]:=branches[j];  
for j:=1 step 1 until z do  
begin   nnrinrow[j]:=nrinrow[j];  
        rrowstart[j]:=rowstart[j];   end;
```

```
LD1: Ld calc(rem);   writetext(30,[[cc]LD1[c]]);  
    if rem>ld then ld:=rem;   Gr inspect(point);  
    Cut point(point,nrinrow,true,bbranches,rrowstart,  
    nnrinrow,zz,bbr);   z:=zz+cutpt[cp-1];  
    br:=bbr+cutbr[cp-1];   if zz=0 then cp:=cp-1;  
    Gr rearrange(a);   Gr add(a);   Time(0,LDF,LDF);  
    rem:=0;
```

```
LD2: zz:=cutpt[1];   bbr:=cutbr[1];  
    Gr subtract;   rem:=rem+1;  
    if zz<2 and rem<cp then goto LD2;  
    if rem<cp and zz>2 then goto LD1;
```

LDF:

end Ld comp;

procedure Mat Rand(branches,rowstart,nrinrow,z,br,  
density,const); integer z,br,density,const;  
integer array branches,rowstart,nrinrow;

comment This procedure uses a random number generator in  
order to generate random matrices. It is entered with two  
identifiers already set. Density is a number lying in the  
range (1,100) and will indicate the required density of  
the final matrix. Const is a positive number which indi-  
cates the amount of leeway or exactness required from the  
given density. The smaller the value of const the more

exact has the final density to be . The usual range was from 1 to 5 . In the practical examples const was set at 0 or 1 for  $z = 60$  and upwards. For smaller  $z$  , const was increased up to 4 or 5 : especially if the required density was low. If the procedure fails to find a matrix fitting the initial conditions after ten attempts, it jumps out of the procedure, Stage and program. To remedy this either increase const or increase density for the same value of  $z$  . ;

```
begin  integer j,k,l,c,m,n,p,q;
      c:=0;
MRS:  n:=0;
      for j:=1 step 1 until z do
      begin  m:=0;  rowstart[j]:=n+1;
            if j>1 then for p:=1 step 1 until j-1 do
                  for q:=rowstart[p] step 1 until
                        rowstart[p]+nrinrow[p]-1 do
                        if branches[q]=j then
                                begin  if n=br then goto MRFAIL;
                                        n:=n+1;  branches[n]:=p;
                                end;
                        if j=z then goto MR;
            for k:=j+1 step 1 until z do
            begin  l:=random(1,100,0);
```

```
if 1<density-const then
  begin   if n=br then goto MRFAIL;
          n:=n+1;  branches[n]:=m:=k;   end;
end;
if m=0 then
  begin   if n=br then goto MRFAIL;
          n:=n+1;  branches[n]:=random(j+1,z,0); end;
MR:  nrinrow[j]:=n-rowstart[j]+1;
end;

l:=100xn/(zxz-z);   k:= if density<35 then 50 else
if density<60 then 70 else 100;
if 10x1+k<11xdensity or 10x1-k>9xdensity then
  begin   if density>10 then   else if 1-10<density then
          goto MRFIN;   writetext(30,[[ccc]FAILURE**IN**MAT*
          *RAND*****FINAL**DENSITY**NOT**ACCURATE**ENOUGH**--
          --**DENSITY**WAS*]);  write(30,format([ndd]),1);
          c:=c+1;  if c#10 then goto MRS  else goto FAIL;
  end
  else goto MRFIN;

MRFAIL: writetext(30,[[ccc]FAILURE**IN**MAT**RAND*****OVER
          FLOW**OF**BRANCHES]);   c:=c+1;
  if c#10 then goto MRS else goto FAIL;
MRFIN:  br:=n;
end  Mat Rand;
```

```
integer procedure random(a,b,c); value a,b,c; integer a,b,c;  
comment This is a standard random number generator. Originally  
it was copied from CACM but it has been mutilated  
slightly in order to take any starter number. The first time  
into this procedure and eleven digit number is inserted for  
the a value, thereafter a takes the value zero. The bounds  
for the random number are given by b and c . b being the  
lower bound and c the upper. ;  
begin own integer x,j,k,l;  
    if c $\neq$ 0 then  
        begin x:=c;  
            j:=34 359 738 368;  
            k:=68 719 476 736;  
            l:=137 438 953 472;  
        end;  
        x:=5x;  
  
R: if x $\geq$ l then x:=x-l;  
    if x $\geq$ k then x:=x-k;  
    if x $\geq$ j then x:=x-j;  
    if x $>$ 109109 then goto R;  
    random:=x/jx(b-a)+a;  
end random;
```

The complete program is as follows.

```
begin   array   mag[1:50];

      integer   datanr,z,br,b,bd,ld,bstop,density,rm,randnr,
              n,m,con,tc,tt,ma,mb,mc,bounds,emit;

      ( The procedures next segment and relabel
        are declared here. )

open(20);   open(30);

writetext(30,[[p]*****MATRIX***BANDWIDTH***
MINIMISATION[c]*****-----
-----*****DATA**TITLE**]);

copytext(20,30,[:,]);

datanr:=read(20);      z:=read(20);
rm:=read(20);         randnr:=bd:=0;

if rm>8 then
begin   density:=read(20);   con:=read(20);
        randnr:=read(20);    rm:=rm-8;
        br:=z↑2xdensity/100+2xz×(1-density/100);
end else   br:=2xread(20);

if rm=2 or rm=6 then ld:=read(20) else ld:=0;
if rm>3 then   begin   bd:=read(20);
                  bstop:=read(20);
                  end   else   bd:=bstop:=0;
```

```
emit:=read(20);
bounds:= if  $rm \neq 2 \times (rm+2)$  then read(20) else 0;
b:=ma:=mb:=mc:=0;
begin   integer array branches[1:br],rowstart,nrinrow[1:z];

      ( All the procedures mentioned in App. 3.0 and
        this one are declared now. )

if datanr=1 then
begin   find(100,[*****]);   relabel(100,[AKPOXMBM]);
      interchange(100); end   else   find(100,[AKPOXMBM]);
interchange(100);
Time(emit,FAIL,PREND);   tc:=time;   tt:=0;
if  $z \uparrow 2 < bounds$  and  $bounds \neq 0$  then bounds:= $z \uparrow 2$ ;
if randnr $\neq 0$    then
begin   writetext(30,[[8c]STAGE**0***-----**RANDOM**MATRIX
      **GENERATOR[c]-----[4c]INITIAL**RANDOM**NR**]);
      write(30,format([nddsdddsdddsddd]),randnr);
      randnr:=random(1,100,randnr);
      writetext(30,[[4c]INITIAL**DENSITY**]);
      write(30,format([nd]),density);
      writetext(30,[[10s]CON**DENSITY*VARIATION**]);
      write(30,format([ndd]),con);
      Mat Rand(branches,rowstart,nrinrow,z,br,density,con);
end   else   Matrix Input(branches,rowstart,nrinrow,z,br);
```

```
writetext(30,[[8c]*****INPUT***MATRIX[c]*****  
-----[ccc]]);  
Matrix Output 1(branches,rowstart,nrinrow,z,br,100xbr/(zxz-z),  
ld,bstop,30);  
if rm#2x(rm+2) then  
begin  Ld comp(branches,rowstart,nrinrow,z,br,ld,bounds);  
        writetext(30,[[8c]STAGE**1***-----**LD**COMP  
UTATION*****LD*=]);  write(30,format([ndd]),ld);  
        writetext(30,[[c]-----]);  
        tc:=time;  tt:=tc+tt;  
        writetext(30,[[4c]TIME**TAKEN**=]);  
        write(30,format([ndd]),tc+60);  
        writetext(30,[.]);  
        write(30,format([nd]),(tc/60-tc+60)x60);  
        writetext(30,[**MINUTES]);  
end;  
PREND:FAIL:  
Magwrite(100);  interchange(100);  
writetext(0,[END**OF**STAGE*-1*---]);  
end;  close(20);  close(30);  close(100);  next segment(2);  
end→
```

App. 3.2 Segment 2.

As in the last segment Min g roots is used to find the roots of all mushrooming r-trees with maximum height. We then take each root in turn and iterate the following sequence.

Graph label will be the control procedure. It builds a mushrooming r-tree for a given root and then orders it by means of the procedures Planarize, Convlv and Convrdr. We have now the rd, lu representation of the r-tree as described in Chpt. 4.51.1 . We enter the procedure Rearrange tree which manipulates the layers of the r-tree into a sausage formation as described in the latter part of Chpt. 4.51.1 .

procedure Rearrange tree(rd,lu,gen,nrabove,nrsides,wght, below,z,root); integer z,root; integer array rd,lu, gen,nrabove,nrsides,wght,below;

comment After filling in the initial values of all the relevant arrays, Calc box is entered to compute sumfloat for the  $\varphi$ -tree. This is followed by Calc float which associates with each point of the  $\varphi$ -tree one of the integers from -3 to +3 . This will indicate whether a point can be moved down or not and whether it has to be moved down if some point below it moves down. This is followed by Float

search which searches the  $\phi$ -tree for a suitable point to move down in order to decrease  $\text{sumlayer}$ . Having found a suitable point  $\text{Readjust}$  is entered in order to alter the layer values associated with the points that have just moved down. Procedure  $\text{backtest}$  is used to find if we can repeat the above iteration ( by testing whether the movement of any points will decrease  $\text{ld}_{m,x}(G)$  ). If not we finish with  $\text{Readjust}$  tree. ;

begin integer d,j,k,l,pem,qem,rem,sem,tem,av,bv,endpt,gmax;

boolean first; integer array box,gox,float,mark[1:z];

procedure Calcbox;

begin gmax:=0;

for j:=1 step 1 until z do box[j]:=0;

for j:=1 step 1 until z do

begin box[gen[j]]:=box[gen[j]]+1;

if gen[j]>gmax then begin gmax:=gen[j];

endpt:=j; end;

end;

end Calc box;

procedure Calc float;

begin for j:=1 step 1 until z do float[j]:=0;

for j:=endpt,belnext(pd,d) while j≠d do

```
begin   d:=j;   float[j]:=3; end;  
for j:=1 step 1 until z do  
    if float[j]=0 then  
begin   for k:=rowstart[j] step 1 until  
        rowstart[j]+nrinrow[j]-1 do  
            if gen[branches[k]]>gen[j] and belnext(pd,branches[k])≠j  
                and float[j]≤1 then   float[j]:=float[j]+2  
            else if gen[branches[k]]<gen[j] and  
                belnext(pd,j)≠branches[k] and (float[j]=0 or  
                float[j]=2) then float[j]:=float[j]+1 ;  
            if float[j]=0 then float[j]:=4;  
end;  
for j:=1 step 1 until z do  
    for k:=rowstart[j] step 1 until  
        rowstart[j]+nrinrow[j]-1 do  
if belnext(pd,j)≠branches[k] and belnext(pd,branches[k])≠j  
    and j>branches[k] then marking(j,branches[k]);  
for j:=1 step 1 until z do  
begin   if (abs(float[j])=1 or abs(float[j])=3)  
        and j≠root then  
        begin   first:=true;  
            for k:=process(pd,urth,first,j) while k≠0 do  
                if gen[k]≤gen[belnext(pd,k)] then
```

```
begin    d:=nbrnext(pd,k,j);
        for l:=process(pd,urth,first,j) while l≠d do ;
        if d=0 then goto C1; end
        else if abs(float[k])=4 then float[k]:=
            sign(float[k]) else if abs(float[k])=2 then
                float[k]:=sign(float[k])×3;
C1: end;
if (abs(float[j])=2 or abs(float[j])=3) and j≠root then
    for k:=belnext(pd,j),belnext(pd,k) while float[k]<0
    and k≠root do float[k]:= if float[k]=-4 then 2 else
                                if float[k]=-1 then 3 else
                                if float[k]=-3 then 3 else
                                if float[k]=-2 then 2 else
                                    float[k];
end;
float[root]:=3;
end Calc float;

procedure Float search;
begin    sem:=rem:=tem:=qem:=pem:=0;
        for j:=1 step 1 until gmax-1 do
        if (box[j]+box[j+1]>sem or (box[j]+box[j+1]=sem and
            (box[j]>tem or box[j+1]>tem))) and mark[j]=0 then
            begin    sem:=box[j]+box[j+1];
```

```
tem:=if box[j]>box[j+1] then box[j] else box[j+1];  
pem:=if box[j]>box[j+1] then j else j+1;  
rem:=if pem=j then j+1 else j;  
qem:=j;      end;
```

end Float search;

procedure marking(a,b); value a,b; integer a,b;

begin integer aa,bb,j,k,l,s;

integer array can[1:z+1];

if gen[a]=gen[b] then goto M;

aa:=if gen[a]<gen[b] then a else b;

bb:=if aa=a then b else a;

for j:=1 step 1 until z+1 do can[j]:=0;

l:=0;

for j:=aa,belnext(pd,k) while j≠k and gen[j]≠gen[k]

do begin l:=l+1; can[l]:=j; k:=j; end;

s:=0;

for j:=bb,belnext(pd,j) while s=0 and j≠root do

for k:=1 step 1 until l do if can[k]=j then s:=k;

if s=0 then s:=l+1; k:=gen[aa];

if s>2 then for j:=2 step 1 until s-1 do

if gen[can[j]]>k then goto M

else begin float[can[j]]:=-abs(float[can[j]]);

k:=gen[can[j]]; end;

M: end marking;

```
boolean procedure backtest;  
begin    first:=false;  
        for j:=1,j+1 while not first and j<gmax do  
            if mark[j]=0 then first:=true;  
        backtest:=first;  
end backtest;  
  
procedure Readjust;  
begin    integer a,b,c,d,e;  
        integer array maj,min[1:z];  
        a:=b:=0;    c:=d:=-1;  
        for j:=1 step 1 until z do  
            if    gen[j]=pem and float[j]≠3    then  
            begin    a:=a+1; maj[a]:=j; end  
            else    if    gen[j]=rem and float[j]≠3    then  
            begin    b:=b+1; min[b]:=j; end;  
            if a=0 and b=0 then goto R3;  
            for j:=0,j+1 while c≠a-1 do  
                for k:=1 step 1 until a do  
                    if nrabove[maj[k]]+nrinrow[maj[k]]=j and  
                        (float[maj[k]]=1 or float[maj[k]]=4) then  
                        begin c:=k; goto R1; end  
                    else if nrabove[maj[k]]+nrinrow[maj[k]]=j  
                        then c:=c+1;
```

```
for j:=0,j+1 while d≠b-1 do
  for k:=1 step 1 until b do
    if nrabove[min[k]]+nrinrow[min[k]]=j and
      (float[min[k]]=1 or float[min[k]]=4)
    then begin d:=k; goto R1; end
    else if nrabove[min[k]]+nrinrow[min[k]]=j
      then d:=d+1;
R3: mark[qem]:=1; goto BT;
R1: first:=true;
for j:=1 step 1 until gmax do mark[j]:=0;
  e:= if d=-1 then maj[c] else min[d];
  for j:=process(pd,urth,first,e) while j≠0 do
    R4: if gen[j]≤gen[belnext(pd,j)]+1 and j≠e then
      begin d:=nbrnext(pd,j,e); j:=d;
        for c:=process(pd,urth,first,e) while c≠d do ;
        if d=0 then goto R5 else goto R4;
      end
      else begin gen[j]:=gen[j]-1; gox[j]:=1; end;
R5: Calcbox; Float search;
  if tem≤av and sem≤bv then goto R2;
  for j:=1 step 1 until z do gen[j]:=gen[j]+gox[j];
  goto RTF;
R2: for j:=1 step 1 until z do
  if wght[j]=0 then nrabove[j]:=gox[j]:=0 else
```

```
    begin    nrabove[j]:=gox[j]:=0;
            for k:=urth[j],pd[k] while k>0 do
                if gen[k]>gen[j] then nrabove[j]:=nrabove[j]+1;
            end;
    av:=tem;  bv:=sem;
end Readjust;
```

```
    for j:=1 step 1 until z do
        begin    wght[j]:=nrabove[j]:=brcount(j,pd,urth)-1;
                float[j]:=box[j]:=nrsides[j]:=gox[j]:=mark[j]:=0;
        end;
    first:=true;  gen[root]:=0;  av:=bv:=10;
    for j:=process(pd,urth,first,root) while j≠0 do
        gen[j]:=gen[belnext(pd,j)]+1;
    for j:=1 step 1 until z do
        nrsides[j]:=nrinrow[j]-wght[j]-1;
    nrsides[root]:=0;
CB: Calcbox;
CF: Calcfloat;
FS: Floatsearch;    if pem=1 then goto RTF;
    Time(0,RTF,Q);
R: Readjust;    goto CB;
BT: if backtest then goto FS;
RTF:end Rearrange tree;
```

Having manipulated the spanning -tree into a suitable configuration procedure Label tree is called. This again consists of smaller procedures. As explained in Chpt. 4.51.2, each succeeding layer is tackled in turn and all the points within it are labelled . Procedure Label abas, when given a point labelled list[j], will label all the points adjacent to it and the layer below it . It will also label all points within the layer above which are two lines away from itself. Continuity then labels all points adjacent to list[j] and not included by Label abas. These points will be those formed by considering the lines of the cotree. Finally any subtree of which list[j] is the root , is investigated to see if any of its points lie in the layer below. This is done by the procedure Up n down. Now all the remainder of the points in the layer above not already labelled will be labelled by means of Proc .

```
procedure Label tree(pd,urth,gen,wght,nr above,nr sides,label,
below,list,z,root,ld,hm); integer z,root,ld,hm; integer
array pd,urth,gen,wght,nr above,nr sides,label,below,list;
begin integer g,a,s,old s,u,j,c,l,b;
procedure Label abas(r); integer r;
begin integer array la,ma[1:z];
integer j,k,l,b,c,d,e,f;
```

```
procedure Label asides;  
begin   for j:=1 step 1 until b-1 do  
        if wght[ma[j]]>0 then  
            for k:=urth[ma[j]],pd[k] while k>0 do  
                if gen[k]=g and label[k]=0 then  
                    begin   a:=a+1;   list[a]:=k;  
                        label[k]:=a;   btest(k);  
                    end;  
end Label asides;  
  
b:=1;  
for j:=1 step 1 until z do   la[j]:=ma[j]:=0;  
for j:=belnext(pd,r),if wght[r]>0 then urth[r] else  
r,pd[j] while j>0 do ifgen[j]=g then  
    for k:=1,k+1 while k<=b do  
        if nrinrow[j]<la[k] or k=b then  
            begin   L: b:=b+1;  
                f:=j;   d:=nrinrow[j];  
                for l:=k step 1 until b do  
                    begin   M: c:=la[l];   la[l]:=d;   d:=c;  
                        e:=ma[l];   ma[l]:=f;   f:=e;  
                    end;  
                k:=b;  
            end;  
        end;  
  
    if b=1 then goto LA;
```

```
for j:=1 step 1 until b-1 do
    if label[ma[j]]=0 then
begin    a:=a+1;        list[a]:=ma[j];
        label[ma[j]]:=a; btest(ma[j]); end;
Label asides;
LA: end Label abas;

procedure btest(a);    value a;    integer a;
for u:=rowstart[a] step 1 until rowstart[a]+nrinrow[a]-1 do
    if label[branches[u]]=0 then
else    if abs(label[branches[u]]-label[a])>ld then
        begin    ld:=abs(label[branches[u]]-label[a]);
            hm:=1;    end
        else    if abs(label[branches[u]]-label[a])=ld
            then    hm:=hm+1;

procedure Continuity(r);    integer r;
begin    integer k,l,p,b,c,d,e,f;    integer array la,ma[1:z];
    for k:=1 step 1 until z do    la[k]:=ma[k]:=0;
    b:=1;    label[0]:=104;
    for k:=rowstart[r] step 1 until
        rowstart[r]+nrinrow[r]-1 do
        if label[branches[k]]=0 and gen[branches[k]]=g then
            for l:=1 step 1 until b do
```

```
    if label[below[branches[k]]]<la[l] or l=b then  
    begin  N: b:=b+1;  f:=branches[k];  
          d:=label[below[branches[k]]];  
          for p:=1 step 1 until b do  
          begin  P: c:=la[p];  la[p]:=d;  d:=c;  
                e:=ma[p];  ma[p]:=f;  f:=e; end;  
          l:=b;  
        end;  
    if b>1 then  for k:=1 step 1 until b-1 do  
        begin  a:=a+1;  list[a]:=ma[k];  
              label[ma[k]]:=a;  btest(ma[k]); end;  
end  Continuity;
```

```
procedure  Up n down(r);  value r;  integer r;  
begin  integer e,f;  
    for e:=rowstart[r] step 1 until  
        rowstart[r]+nrinrow[r]-1 do  
        for f:=rowstart[branches[e]] step 1 until  
            rowstart[branches[e]]+nrinrow[branches[e]]-1 do  
        if gen[branches[f]]=g and label[branches[f]]=0 then  
        begin  a:=a+1;  list[a]:=branches[f];  
              label[branches[f]]:=a;  btest(branches[f]);  
        end;  
end  Up n down;
```

```
procedure Proc(r); value r; integer r;
begin integer j; boolean second;
    second:=true;
    for j:=process(pd,urth,second,r) while j $\neq$ 0 do
        if label[j]=0 and gen[j]=g then
            begin    a:=a+1;        list[a]:=j;
                label[j]:=a;    btest(j);
            end;
end Proc;

for j:=1 step 1 until z do label[j]:=list[j]:=0;
g:=a:=1; old s:=ld:=hm:=0; list[1]:=root;
label[root]:=1; Proc(root);    g:=2;    s:=a;
A: for j:=olds+1,j+1 while j $\leq$ s do
begin    c:=a;    Label abas(list[j]);
        Continuity(list[j]);
        b:=a;
        if c $\neq$ b then
begin    for l:=c+1 step 1 until b do    Up n down(list[l]);
        for l:=c+1 step 1 until b do    Proc(list[l]);
    end;
end;
olds:=s;    s:=a;    g:=g+1;    if s $\neq$ z then goto A;
end Label tree;
```

```
procedure Graph Label(branches,rowstart,nr in row,z,br,
endpt,ld,hm,S);   integer  z,br,endpt,ld,hm;   integer
array branches,rowstart,nr in row,S;
begin   integer  j,old s,s,a,root,k;   integer array  rd,
      lu,gen,nrabove,nr sides,below,nbr,label,list,wght[0:z];
      root:=endpt;
      for j:=1 step 1 until z do   gen[j]:=below[j]:=
          nrabove[j]:=nrsides[j]:=0;
      list[1]:=root;  a:=s:=1;  old s:=0;
      TL: for j:=olds+1,j+1 while j<=s do
          for k:=rowstart[list[j]] step 1 until
              rowstart[list[j]]+nrinrow[list[j]]-1 do
              if below[branches[k]]=0 and branches[k]≠root then
                  begin   a:=a+1;  list[a]:=branches[k];
                      below[branches[k]]:=list[j];  end;
              olds:=s;   s:=a;   if s≠z then goto TL;
      Planarize(below,nbr,z);
      Convlu(below,nbr,z,lu);
      Convrd(below,nbr,z,rd);
      Rearrange tree(rd,lu,gen,nrabove,nrsides,wght,below,
z,root);  Label tree(rd,lu,gen,wght,nrabove,nrsides,
label,below,S,z,root,ld,hm);
end Graph label;
```

```
procedure  S Output(S,z);  integer z;  integer array S;  
begin  integer j;  
      for j:=1 step 1 until z do  
      begin  write(30,format([nddddd]),S[j]);  
            if j=10×(j+10) then  newline(30,1);  
      end;  
end  S Output;
```

The complete program is as follows.

```
begin  integer  datanr,z,br,ld,endpt,rm,emit,b,bstop,bd,tt,  
      f,tc,ec,bsmal,hm,h,ma,mb,mc,bounds;  
      array mag[1:50];
```

( The procedures Mag read1 and next segment  
are declared now. )

```
find(100,[AKPOXMBM]);  Magread1(100);  
open(30);  
begin  integer array  branches[1:br],rowstart,nrinrow,  
      S,Seq,ends[1:z];
```

( All the rest of the procedures declared in  
this sub-Appendix are now declared with  
those of App. 3.0. )

```
Mag read2(100);
rewind(100);
if rm=2 or rm=3 or rm=6 or rm=7 then
begin   Time(emit,FAIL,FAIL);
        tc:=time;  h:=10;
        for f:=1 step 1 until z do Seq[f]:=f;
        bsmal:=z-3;  writetext(30,[[p]STAGE**2***-----**
APPROXIMATE**LABELLING**OF**GRAPH[c]-----]);
        Min g roots(branches,rowstart,nrinrow,z,br,ends,ec,f);
P: endpt:=ends[ec];
        Graph Label(branches,rowstart,nrinrow,z,br,endpt,b,hm,S);
        if bsmal>b or bsmal=b and hm<h then
        begin   writetext(30,[[8c]A**PERMUTATION**WHICH**YIELDS
                **B**]);  write(30,format([ndcc]),b);
                S Output(S,z);
                for f:=1 step 1 until z do Seq[f]:=S[f];
                bsmal:=b;  h:=hm;
        end;
        Time(O,R,Q);
R: ec:=ec-1;  if ec>0 then goto P;
Q: Perm branches(branches,rowstart,nrinrow,Seq,br,z);
   writetext(30,[[4c]*****REARRANGED**MATRIX[c]
                *****-----[cc]]);
   b:= if rm=2 or rm=6 then bsmal else ld+(bsmal-ld)×3/4;
```

```
Matrix Output1(branches,rowstart,nrinrow,z,br,
b,bstop,30);    tc:=time;    tt:=tt+tc;
writetext(30,[[4c]TIME**TAKEN**=]);
write(30,format([_n d d]),tc+60);
writetext(30,[.]);
write(30,format([_n d]),(tc/60-tc+60)×60);
writetext(30,[**MINUTES]);
end else    b:= if bd≠0 and bd>ld then bd
           else if ld≠0 and ld>bd then ld+1 else z-3;
interchange(100);
Magwrite(100);
interchange(100);
writetext(0,[END**OF**STAGE**2*-----]);
FAIL:
end; close(30); close(100); next segment(3);
end
→
```

App. 3.3 Segment 3.

There is one main procedure only called Min Band Width. Within it there are three small procedures called test, next unused and next nun (standing for next necessary and unused).

integer procedure test;

comment;      At any moment during the program the integer array S[i] will be partially or totally filled. When this procedure is applied, it takes on the value of the ld of the partial permutation as described in S[i] .

begin    t:=0;      lim:= if r+b>z then z else r+b;

for j:=r+1,j+1 while j<lim and t=0 do

if j-b>1 then

for k:= if r<b then 1 else r-b step 1 until j-b-1 do

for l:=0 step 1 until nr in row[S[k]]-1 do

if branches[rowstart[S[k]]+1]=S[j] then t:=k;

      test:=t;

end test;

integer procedure next unused(a);    value a;    integer a;  
comment this will give the lowest valued unlabelled point  
The unlabelled points are kept in the array    unused nr[j].  
unusednr[k] = 0    if it has been labelled already and    = k  
otherwise ;

begin    t:=0;  
      if a>0 and a≤z then  
          for a:=a,a+1 while    t=0 and a≤z do  
              if unused nr[a]≠0 then    t:=a;  
      next unused:=t;  
end    nextunused;

integer procedure next nun(a);    value a;    integer a;  
comment Within the integer array    needed nr[j,k] is kept  
the set    N(j)    of Chpt. 4.63 .    Thus if a point  $v_k$  lies  
in    N(j) then    needed nr[j,k] = k    else it    = 0 . This  
procedure at step j will give the lowest unlabelled point  
which lies in    N(j). ;

begin    t:=0;  
      if a>0 and a≤z then  
          for a:=a,a+1 while    t=0 and a≤z do  
              if unused nr[a]≠0 and needed nr[r,a]≠0 then    t:=a;  
      next nun:=t;  
end    nextnun;

The program has two main entries EN1 and EN2 . EN1 corresponds to Rule of Choice 1 and in particular that section of program after label T . EN2 corresponds to Rule of Choice 2. Label M corresponds to Test for Rejection 2. Test for Rejection 1 occurs in the two lines just before label T. When a complete permutation is reached a jump is made to label L . Here the true value of b (or ld) of the permutation S[i] is made and outputed with the array S[i].

```
procedure Min Band Width(branches,rowstart,nrinrow,  
    Seq,z,b,bstop,tc); integer z,b,bstop,tc;  
integer array branches,nrinrow,rowstart,Seq;  
begin integer a,r,n,j,k,l,s,t,f1,lax,cut,lim,f count,  
    e count,e sum; integer array needednr[1:z,1:z],  
    unusednr,tcont,S[1:z]; boolean up,down;
```

( The procedures next unused, next nun and  
test are declared here . )

```
if bstop<1 or bstop>z-1 then  
begin writetex (30,[[cc]B*STOP**OUT**OF**BOUNDS  
    ***NEW**VALUE**SET**EQUAL**TO*O[cc]])  
    bstop:=1;  
end;
```

```
f1:=format([ndddd]);
up:=down:=false;  esum:=tc:=0;
if b<b stop then b:=b stop else if b>z then b:=z-1;

START:  for j:=1 step 1 until z do
        S[j]:=unused nr[j]:=t count[j]:=0;
for j:=1 step 1 until z do
        for k:=1 step 1 until b do    needed nr[j,k]:=0;
r:=1;      cut:= f count:= e count:=0;
for j:=1 step 1 until z do    Seq[j]:=j;
EN 1: r:=r-1;  e count:=e count+1;
for j:=1 step 1 until z do    unused nr[j]:=j;
if r>0 then
        for j:=1 step 1 until r do    unused nr[S[j]]:=0;
if r=cut then
begin    r:=r+2;  S[r]:=0;
        S[r-1]:= next unused(S[r-1]+1);
        if S[r-1]=0 then goto FAIL;
        goto EN 1;  end;
lax:=b-tcount[r];
if S[r+1]≠0 then goto T;
for j:=1 step 1 until z do    needed nr[r,j]:=0;
if r>cut+1 then
        for j:=1 step 1 until z do
```

```
needed nr[r,j]:= if needed nr[r-1,j]≠0 then j else 0;
for j:=rowstart[S[r]] step 1 until
    rowstart[S[r]]+nr in row[S[r]]-1 do
    needed nr[r,branches[j]]:=branches[j];
for j:= if r-b<cut then cut+1 else r-b step 1 until r do
    needed nr[r,S[j]]:=0;
t:=0;
for j:=1 step 1 until z do
    if needed nr[r,j]≠0 then      t:=t+1;
t count[r]:=t;
if t=0 then      begin      cut:=r;      r:=r+1;
                    S[r]:=0;      goto EN 1;
                    end;
lax:=b-t; if lax<0 then goto EN 1;
T: a:=S[r+1]+1;
lim:= if z-r>b then b else z-r;
if lax>0 and nextunused(a)=0 or lax<0 and
    nextnun(a)=0 then goto EN 1;
for k:=1,k+1 while k<lim do
begin      t:= if k=2 then 1 else a;
            if lax>0 then
                begin      a:=S[r+k]:=next unused(t);
                    if needed nr[r,a]=0 then lax:=lax-1;
                    unused nr[a]:=0;      end
```

```

    else    begin    a:=S[r+k]:=next nun(t);
                    unused nr[a]:=0; end;
end;
goto F;

EN 2: e count:=e count+1;
k:=n:=if r+b>z then z else r+b;
for j:=1 step 1 until z do unused nr[j]:=j;
for j:=1 step 1 until n do unused nr[S[j]]:=0;
lax:=0;
if needed nr[r,S[k]]=0 then
begin    if nextunused(S[k]) $\neq$ 0 then
        begin    S[n]:=next unused(S[k]);
                goto F;    end
        else    lax:=lax+1;
    end;
M: unused nr[S[k]]:=S[k];
k:=k-1;    if k=r then goto EN 1;
if needed nr[r,S[k]]=0 then lax:=lax+1;
if S[k]>S[k+1]then goto M;
a:=if lax>0 then next unused(S[k]) else next nun(S[k]);
unused nr[a]:=0;    unused nr[S[k]]:=S[k];
S[k]:=a;    lax:=lax-1;
if needed nr[r,S[k]] $\neq$ 0 then lax:=lax+1;
a:=1;
```

```
for k:=k+1 while k<n do  
  begin    lax:=lax-1;    a:=S[k]:=  
          if lax>0 then next unused(a) else nextnun(a);  
          unused nr[S[k]]:=0;  
          if needed nr[r,S[k]]≠0 then lax:=lax+1;  
  end;  
F: f count:=f count+1;  
  
  if tc<100 then tc:=tc+1  
  else begin tc:=0; Time(0,TFAIL,PREND); end;  
  if test≠0 then goto EN 2;  
  if r<z-b then   begin    r:=r+2;    S[r]:=0;  
                   goto EN 1;   end;  
  
L: b:=b-1;    s:=0;  
  
  for r:=b,r+1 while r<z-b and s=0 do    s:=test;  
  if s=0 then goto L;  
  writetext(30,[[8c]A**PERMUTATION**WHICH**YIELDS**B**]);  
  write(30,format([ndcc]),b+1);  
  for j:=1 step 1 until z do begin    Seq[j]:=S[j];  
                                write(30,format([ndddd]),S[j]);  
                                if j=10×(j+10) then newline(30,1);  
                                end;  
  writetext(30,[[3c]F*COUNT**WAS*]);  
  write(30,f1,fcount);  
  writetext(30,[[3s]-----***E*COUNT**WAS*]);
```

```
write(30,f1+1,ecount);  
down:=true;  e sum:=e sum+e count;  
if up or b<bstop then goto FINISH else  
begin  r:=s;      cut:=0;  
        ecount:=fcount:=0;  
        if tcount[r]<b then goto EN2;  
        goto EN 1; end;
```

```
FAIL: writetext(30,[[7c]UNABLE**TO**FIND**PERM**FOR**B*=]);  
      write(30,format([ndcc]),b);  
      writetext(30,[[c]F*COUNT**WAS*]);  
      write(30,f1,fcount);  
      writetext(30,[[3s]-----**E*COUNT**WAS*]);  
      write(30,f1+1,ecount);  
      up:=true;  
      esum:=esum+ecount;  
      if down then goto FINISH;  
      b:=b+1;  
      goto START;
```

```
TFAIL: esum:=esum+ecount;
```

```
FINISH: b:=b+1;
```

```
writetext(30,[[5c]END**OF**MIN**BAND**WIDTH*-----  
              **TOTAL**E*COUNT**WAS]);
```

```
write(30,f1+2,e sum);
```

```
end  Min Band Width;
```

```
procedure Dot Output(branches,rowstart,nrinrow,z,br);  
integer z,br; integer array branches,rowstart,nrinrow;  
comment This procedure is given the matrix in the branches list notation and outputs the corresponding adjacency matrix in terms of dots and crosses. The dots stand for zeroes and the crosses for ones. This enables one to visualise the bandwidth of the matrix. ;  
  
begin integer j,k,l,s;  
    writetext(30,[[6c]DOT/CROSS***REPRESENTATION**OF**  
        THE**FINAL**MATRIX[ccc]]);  
  
    if z>60 then  
        for j:=1 step 1 until z do  
            begin writetext(30,[[c]]);  
                for k:=1 step 1 until z do  
                    begin s:=0;  
                        for l:=1 step 1 until nrinrow[j] do  
                            if branches[rowstart[j]-1+l]=k then s:=1;  
                        if s=1 then writetext(30,[X]) else writetext(30,[.]);  
                    end;  
                end;  
  
    if z<60 then  
        for j:=1 step 1 until z do  
            begin writetext(30,[[c]]);
```

```
for k:=1 step 1 until z do  
  begin    s:=0;  
    for l:=1 step 1 until nrinrow[j] do  
      if branches[rowstart[j]-1+1]=k then    s:=1;  
  if s=1 then writetext(30,[X*]) else writetext(30,[.*]);  
  end;  
end;  
writetext(30,[[cccc]]);  
end;
```

The complete program is as follows.

```
begin  integer  b,z,br,s,j,k,datanr,bstop,bd,ld,emit,tt,tc,  
        bounds,rm,ma,mb,mc;  array  mag[1:50];  
  
  ( The procedures  Mag read1, next segment and  
    relabel are now declared. )  
  
open(30);  find(100,[AKPOXMBM]);  Magread1(100);  
begin  integer array branches[1:br],rowstart,nr in row,S[1:z];  
  
  ( All the procedures of this sub-appendix and  
    those in App. 3.0 are now declared. )
```

```
Mag read2(100);  
rewind(100);  
if rm>3 and b>bstop and b>ld then  
begin   Time(emit,PREND,PREND);  
        tc:=time;  
        writetext(30,[[p]STAGE**3**-----**MIN**BAND**  
                     WIDTH[c]-----]);  
        if bstop=0 or bstop<ld then bstop:=ld;  
        b:=b-1;  
        if bd<b and bd≠0 then b:=bd;  
        Min Band Width(branches,rowstart,nrinrow,S,z,b,  
                        bstop,tc);  
        Perm branches(branches,rowstart,nrinrow,S,br,z);  
        writetext(30,[[8c]*****FINAL**MATRIX[c]*****  
                     ***-----[cc]]);  
        Matrix Output1(branches,rowstart,nrinrow,z,br,b,  
                        bstop,30);  
        tc:=time;      tt:=tt+tc;  
        writetext(30,[[4c]TIME**TAKEN**=]);  
        write(30,format([ndd]),tc+60);  
        writetext(30,[.]);  
        write(30,format([nd]),(tc/60-tc+60)×60);  
        writetext(30,[**MINUTES]);  
end;
```

```
Dot Output(branches,rowstart,nrinrow,z,br);
writetext(30,[[10c]END**OF**ANALYSIS**BY**MATRIX**BANDWIDTH
**MINIMISATION[cccc]TOTAL**TIME**TAKEN**=*]);
write(30,format([nnd]),tt+60);
writetext(30,[.]);
write(30,format([nd]),(tt/60-tt+60)*60);
writetext(30,[**MINUTES.SECONDS]);
PREND:
if datanr<0 then relabel(100,[*****]);
writetext(0,[END**OF**STAGE*-*3*-----[cc]]);
end; close(30); close(100);
    if datanr>0 then nextsegment(1);
end
→
```

### App. 3.4 Input Specification.

The input layout is as follows :-

```
: < TITLE > ;  
data nr ;  
z ;  
rm ;  
    density ;  
    con ;      }      if rm > 8 .  
    rand nr ; }  
br ;  -----  if  rm < 8 .  
    ld ;  -----  if  rm = 2 or 6 .  
bd ;  }  
b stop ; }  -----  if  rm > 3 .  
emit ;  
bounds;  -----  if rm = 1, 3, 5 or 7 .  
< Branches list >  
→→→
```

If this is the first set of data ( or using previous terminology , it is the first block of data ), then data nr is set equal to 1 . If it is the last, it is set to -1 , otherwise it is put equal to 0 .

z is the number of points in the graph.

rm is a control variable on the three segments. Depending upon its value the program will complete the corresponding segments or stages . If  $rm > 8$  then the matrix will be randomly produced within the first segment by Mat Rand . If it is less than 8 , the matrix is being input in the branches list representation. The table for rm is :

rm	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
	9	10	11	12	13	14	15
Stages	1	2	1,2	3	1,3	2,3	all

The density is a number between 0 and 100.

con is usually between 0 and 5.

rand nr is an eleven digit random number.

br is the number of lines in the graph.

ld is the approximate  $ld_m$  for the graph, if it is unknown insert 0 .

bd is an upper bound on the  $ld_m$  , again if this is unknown insert the maximum possible number, z .

b stop is the value of ld at which Stage 3 is to stop.

If this is unknown or immaterial insert 0 .

emit is the time interruption frequency in seconds.

bounds is an upper bound for the arrays end1 and end2.

It is convenient to set it a bit high at 2000.

App. 3.5 Specimen Output.

MATRIX BANDWIDTH MINIMISATION

DATA TITLE FLANGED/2

-----  
INPUT MATRIX  
-----

Z	BR	DENSITY	B	BSTOP
27;	30;	9;	0;	0;

ROW	NR IN ROW	MATRIX
1;	2;	2; 3;
2;	3;	1; 4; 5;
3;	2;	1; 6;
4;	2;	2; 7;
5;	2;	2; 8;
6;	2;	3; 9;
7;	2;	4; 10;
8;	2;	5; 11;
9;	2;	6; 12;
10;	3;	7; 13; 14;
11;	5;	8; 12; 15; 16; 17;
12;	2;	9; 11;
13;	2;	10; 18;
14;	2;	10; 15;
15;	2;	14; 11;
16;	2;	11; 19;
17;	2;	11; 20;
18;	2;	13; 21;
19;	2;	16; 21;
20;	2;	17; 22;
21;	5;	18; 19; 23; 24; 25;
22;	3;	20; 26; 27;
23;	1;	21;
24;	1;	21;
25;	2;	21; 26;
26;	2;	22; 25;
27;	1;	22;

STAGE 1 ----- LD COMPUTATION LD = 4  
-----

TIME TAKEN = 1.22 MINUTES

STAGE 2 ----- APPROXIMATE LABELLING OF GRAPH  
-----

A PERMUTATION WHICH YIELDS  $B = 6$

27	22	20	26	17	25	23	24	11	16
19	21	8	12	15	18	5	9	14	13
2	6	10	1	4	3	7			

A PERMUTATION WHICH YIELDS  $B = 5$

26	25	23	22	27	21	24	20	18	19
17	15	16	13	11	12	14	10	8	9
7	5	4	6	2	3	1			

A PERMUTATION WHICH YIELDS  $B = 5$

3	1	6	2	9	4	5	12	7	8
11	10	15	16	17	13	14	19	20	18
24	21	22	23	25	27	26			

REARRANGED MATRIX  
-----

Z	BR	B	B STOP
27;	30;	5;	0;
ROW	NR IN ROW		MATRIX
1;	2;	2;	3;
2;	2;	4;	1;
3;	2;	1;	5;
4;	3;	2;	6;
5;	2;	3;	8;
6;	2;	4;	9;
7;	2;	4;	10;
8;	2;	5;	11;
9;	2;	6;	12;
10;	2;	7;	11;

11;	5;	10;	8;	13;	14;	15;
12;	3;	9;	16;	17;		
13;	2;	17;	11;			
14;	2;	11;	18;			
15;	2;	1;	19;			
16;	2;	12;	20;			
17;	2;	12;	13;			
18;	2;	14;	22;			
19;	2;	15;	23;			
20;	2;	16;	22;			

21;	1;	22;				
22;	5;	20;	18;	24;	21;	25;
23;	3;	19;	27;	26;		
24;	1;	22;				
25;	2;	22;	27;			
26;	1;	23;				
27;	2;	23;	25;			

TIME TAKEN = 1.46 MINUTES

STAGE 3 ----- MIN BAND WIDTH  
-----

A PERMUTATION WHICH YIELDS B = 5

1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20
21	22	23	24	25	26	27			

F COUNT WAS 19 ----- E COUNT WAS 20

A PERMUTATION WHICH YIELDS B = 4

1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
11	13	12	14	15	17	16	18	19	20
21	22	23	24	25	26	27			

F COUNT WAS 22 ----- E COUNT WAS 22

END OF MIN BAND WIDTH ----- TOTAL E COUNT WAS 42

FINAL MATRIX

Z	BR	B	B STOP			
27;	30;	4;	4;			
ROW	NR IN ROW	MATRIX				
1;	2;	2;	3;			
2;	2;	4;	1;			
3;	2;	1;	5;			
4;	3;	2;	6;	7;		
5;	2;	3;	8;			
6;	2;	4;	9;			
7;	2;	4;	10;			
8;	2;	5;	11;			
9;	2;	6;	13;			
10;	2;	7;	1;			
11;	5;	10;	8;	12;	14;	15;
12;	2;	16;	11;			
13;	3;	9;	17;	16;		
14;	2;	11;	18;			
15;	2;	11;	19;			
16;	2;	13;	12;			
17;	2;	13;	20;			
18;	2;	14;	22;			
19;	2;	15;	23;			
20;	2;	17;	22;			
21;	1;	22;				
22;	5;	20;	18;	24;	21;	25;
23;	3;	19;	27;	26;		
24;	1;	22;				
25;	2;	22;	27;			
26;	1;	23;				
27;	2;	23;	25;			

TIME TAKEN = 0.14 MINUTES



APPENDIX 4.

-----

App. 4.1 Cascade.

The main procedure was called, appropriately Cascade. It is as follows :

```
procedure Cascade(mat,z);  
integer z; integer array mat;  
comment      mat[i,j] contains the cost associated matrix  
and mat[i,i] = 0 . If  $v_i$  is not adjacent to  $v_j$  , then  
mat[i,j] = 10. At the end of the second pass mat[i,j]  
will contain the length of the shortest path from  $v_i$  to  $v_j$  ;  
begin integer j,k,l,min;  
  for j:=1 step 1 until z do  
    for k:=1 step 1 until z do  
      if j≠k then  
        begin min:=mat[j,k];  
          for l:=1 step 1 until z do  
            if min>mat[j,l]+mat[l,k] then  
              min:=mat[j,k]:=mat[j,l]+mat[l,k];  
        end;  
  for j:=z step -1 until 1 do  
    for k:=z step -1 until 1 do
```

```
if j≠k then  
begin   min:=mat[j,k];  
      for l:=z step -1 until 1 do  
        if min>mat[j,l]+mat[l,k] then  
          min:=mat[j,k]:=mat[j,l]+mat[l,k];  
end;  
end Cascade;
```

The data for this and the other two programs was in the branches list representation. Thus another procedure Transform was written in order to transform the data back into the adjacency type form.

```
procedure Transform(branches,rowstart,nrinrow,z,br,mat,di,dist);  
integer z,br,di; integer array branches,rowstart,nrinrow,mat,dist;  
begin   integer j,k,l;  
      for j:=1 step 1 until z do  
        for k:=1 step 1 until z do  
          mat[j,k]:=9*3;  
      for j:=1 step 1 until z do   mat[j,j]:=0;  
      for j:=1 step 1 until z do  
        for k:=rowstart[j] step 1 until  
          rowstart[j]+nrinrow[j]-1 do  
          mat[j,branches[k]]:= if di>0 then dist[k] else 1;  
end Transform;
```

The resultant shortest path distance matrix was output by means of the procedure Mat out :-

```
procedure Mat out(mat,z); integer z; integer array mat;
begin integer j,k;
    writetext(30,[[p]CL21*****SHORTEST**DISTANCE**MATRIX
        **---**CASCADE**METHOD[8c]]);
    for j:=1 step 1 until z do
        begin if j≠(j+11)×11 then newline(30,1)
            else newline(30,2);
            for k:=1 step 1 until z do
                begin if k=(k+11)×11 then space(30,2);
                    if mat[j,k]<103 then write(30,format([nddd]),
                        mat[j,k]) else writetext(30,[[***X]]);
                end;
            end;
    end Mat out;

procedure Distance input(br,dist); integer br;
    integer array dist;

comment      The costs to be associated with each line was
read in by means of this procedure, the ordering being the
same as the lines concerned. ;

begin integer j;
    for j:=1 step 1 until br do dist[j]:=read(20);
end Distance input;
```

App. 4.2 Shortest Route 1 .

The control procedure was titled Shortest Route. It assigned the root to each point in turn and built a mushrooming r-tree. As soon as the r-tree had been built, it was output. This was accomplished by running down the r-tree from each point of the digraph in turn and outputting the successive belows. If a point does not belong to the mushrooming r-tree (i.e. there is no path from the root to that point, this is indicated by its distance vector,  $gen$  , being still equal to  $n^4$  .

```
procedure Tree span(branches,rowstart,nrinrow,z,br,gen,
below,root); integer root,z,br; integer array
branches,rowstart,nrinrow,below,gen;
comment This is the procedure which builds a mushrooming
r-tree in the array below for the root point root . ;
begin integer j,a,b,c,k,old a;
    integer array list[1:z];
    for j:=1 step 1 until z do
    begin below[j]:=-1;
        gen[j]:=  $n^6$ ; end;
    below[root]:=old a:=gen[root]:=0;
    list[1]:=root; a:=b:=1;
```

```
TS:  for j:=olda+1,j+1 while j<a do
      for k:=rowstart[list[j]] step 1 until
          rowstart[list[j]]+nrinrow[list[j]]-1 do
          if below[branches[k]]=-1 then
begin   c:=branches[k];
          below[c]:=list[j];
          gen[c]:=gen[list[j]]+1;
          b:=b+1;  list[b]:=c;
end;
olda:=a;   a:=b;
if b≠z and olda≠a then goto TS;
end  Tree span;

procedure  Shortest routes(branches,rowstart,nrinrow,z,br);
integer z,br;   integer array  branches,rowstart,nrinrow;
begin  integer j,k,root,l;   integer array  below,gen[1:z];
      writetext(30,[[p]CL21*****SHORTEST***PATHS***THROUGH*
          **A***GRAPH[cccc]ORIGIN***DESTINATION***DISTANCE*
          *****ROUTE[cc]]);
      for root:=1 step 1 until z do
      begin  Tree span(branches,rowstart,nrinrow,z,br,gen,
          below,root);  write(30,format([nddd]),root);
          for k:=1 step 1 until z do
              if k≠root then
```

```
begin   write(30,format([8snddd]),k);  
        l:=k;   if below[k]=-1 then writetext(30,  
        [[11s]NONE]) else write(30,format([6sndd  
        dddd]),gen[k]);  
        if below[k]=-1 then goto SR1;  
        writetext(30,[[8s]]);  
        for l:=1,below[l] while l≠0 do  
            write(30,format([ndddd]),l);  
        SR1:   writetext(30,[[c]]);  
        if k≠z then writetext(30,[[4s]]);  
    end;  
end;  
end   Shortest routes;
```

The final program comprised of the above two procedures and the procedure Matrix Input.

App. 4.3 Shortest Route 2 .

The program is very similar to Shortest Route 1 . The difference is that the d-r tree is built up within the control procedure, Shrt route 2 , and not in another ( i.e. Treeform ). Two other procedures are used : Matrix input and Dist input.

```
procedure Shrt route 2(branches,rowstart,nrinrow,z,br,dist);  
integer z,br; integer array branches,nrinrow,rowstart,dist;  
begin integer root,j,k,l,m,s,olds,a,c,d;  
      boolean first;  
      integer array below,gen[1:z],list[1:5xz];  
integer procedure distance(a,b); value a,b; integer a,b;  
      for m:=rowstart[a] step 1 until  
        rowstart[a]+nrinrow[a]-1 do  
        if branches[m]=b then distance:=dist[m];  
      writetext(30,[[p]CL21*****SHORTEST***PATHS***THROUGH  
        ***A***COST***ASSOCIATED***GRAPH[cccc]ORIGIN***DESTI  
        NATION***DISTANCE[9s]ROUTE[cc]]);  
      for root:=1 step 1 until z do  
      begin for j:=1 step 1 until z do gen[j]:=n5;  
        list[1]:=below[root]:=root;  
        gen[root]:=olds:=0;      s:=a:=1;
```

```
ST: for j:=olds+1,j+1 while j<=s do
      for k:=rowstart[list[j]] step 1 until
      rowstart[list[j]]+nrinrow[list[j]]-1 do
          if gen[branches[k]] > gen[list[j]] +
              dist[k] then
begin    c:=branches[k];    d:=list[j];
          a:=a+1;    below[c]:=d;
          if a > 5xz then goto NOGO;
          list[a]:=c;    gen[c]:=gen[d]+dist[k];
end;
if a=s then goto SRTF;
olds:=s;    s:=a;    goto ST;
NOGO: writetext(30,[[cc]NOGO***FAILURE***ARRAY**LIST**TOO
      **SMALL*---*ALTER**UPPER**BOUND[cc]]); goto SFIN;

SRTF: write(30,format([nddd]),root);
      for l:=1 step 1 until z do
          if l≠root then
begin    write(30,format([8snddd]),l);
          k:=l;
          if gen[k]=5 then writetext(30,[[11s]NONE])
              else write(30,format([10sndd]),gen[k]);
          if gen[k]=5 then goto SRTF1;
          writetext(30,[[8s]]);
```

```
    for k:=k,below[k] while k $\neq$ root do  
        write(30,format([ndddd]),k);  
    write(30,format([ndddd]),root);  
    SRTF1:  writetext(30,[[c]]);  
    if l $\neq$ z then writetext(30,[[4s]])  
    else writetext(30,[[c]]);  
end;  
end;  
SFIN: end  Shrt route 2;
```

If the procedure should fail ( at NOGO ) because the array list is too small, the upper bound declaration for list should be raised from  $5 \times z$  to some higher figure e.g. 6 or 7 times  $z$ . If this method was to be programmed in a list processing language, we would have to declare space for only  $2 \times z$  words because the useful part of the array list is from `list[olds]` to `list[a]` and this will never exceed twice the number of points in the digraph ( Chpt. 5.22 ).

App. 4.4 Specimen Input and Output.

The input layout or format for Cascade and Shortest Route 2 is of the form : -

data nr ;

z ; br ;

< Branches list representation >

→

di ; ----- This has a value only for Cascade.

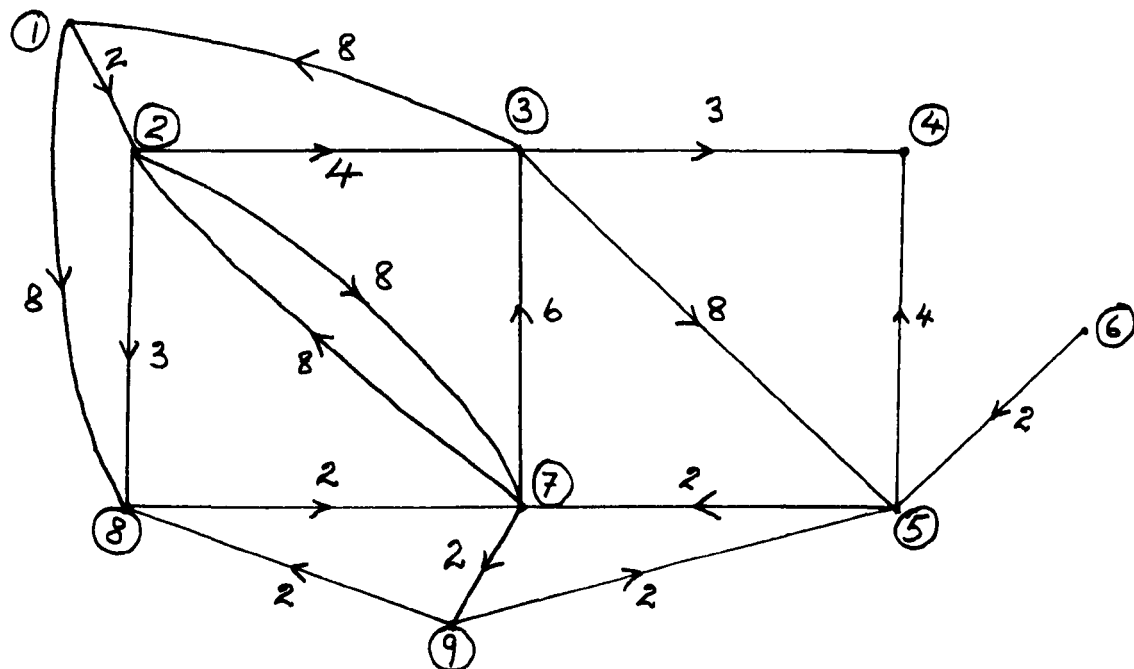
If all the distances are unity  
then  $di < 0$  and the following  
cost matrix is not read, other-  
wise  $di > 0$  .

< Cost Matrix > ----- The cost element of each line is  
read in, the ordering being the  
same as the branches list.

→→→

For Shortest Route 1 , the input is as  
above up to the first end of message (→). For test pur-  
poses the same data tape was used for all three programs  
except that di was punched in by hand for Cascade.

Below is given the digraph of a simple problem with the output from the Cascade method program and the program Shortest Route 2.



CL21    SHORTEST    DISTANCE    MATRIX    ---    CASCADE    METHOD

0	2	6	9	11	X	7	5	9
12	0	4	7	9	X	5	3	7
8	10	0	3	8	X	10	13	12
X	X	X	0	X	X	X	X	X
16	10	8	4	0	X	2	6	4
18	12	10	6	2	0	4	8	6
14	8	6	8	4	X	0	4	2
16	10	8	10	6	X	2	0	4
18	12	10	6	2	X	4	2	0

CL21    SHORTEST    PATHS THROUGH    A    DIGRAPH

ORIGIN	DESTINATION	DISTANCE	ROUTE
1	2	2	2 1
	3	6	3 2 1
	4	9	4 3 2 1
	5	11	5 9 7 8 2 1
	6	NONE	
	7	7	7 8 2 1
	8	5	8 2 1 2 1
	9	9	9 7 8 2 1
	1	12	1 3 2 2 8 2
	3	4	3 2 2 8 2
2	4	7	4 3 2 2 8 2
	5	9	5 9 7 8 2
	6	NONE	
	7	5	7 8 2 2 8 2
	8	3	8 2 2 8 2
	9	7	9 7 8 2 2
	1	8	1 3 2 3 3
	2	10	2 1 3 3 3
	4	3	4 3 3 3 3
	5	8	5 3 3 3 3
3	6	NONE	
	7	10	7 5 3 3 3
	8	13	8 2 1 3 3
	9	12	9 7 5 3 3
	1	NONE	
	2	NONE	
	3	NONE	
	5	NONE	
	6	NONE	
	7	NONE	
4	8	NONE	
	9	NONE	
	1	NONE	
	2	NONE	
	3	NONE	
	5	NONE	
	6	NONE	
	7	NONE	
	8	NONE	
	9	NONE	
5	1	16	1 3 7 5 5
	2	10	2 7 5 5 5
	3	8	3 7 5 5 5
	4	4	4 5 5 5 5
	6	NONE	
	7		2 7 5 5 5
	8	6	8 9 7 5 5
	9	4	9 7 5 5 5

6	1 2 3 4 5 7 8 9 1 2 3 4 5 6 8 9 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 9 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8	18 12 10 6 2 4 8 6 14 8 6 8 4 NONE 4 2 16 10 8 10 6 NONE 2 4 18 12 10 6 2 NONE 4 2	1 2 3 4 5 7 8 9 1 2 3 4 5 8 9 1 2 3 4 5 7 9 1 2 3 4 5 7 8	3 7 7 5 5 6 5 9 7 3 7 7 5 9 9 7 3 7 7 5 9 8 7 3 7 7 5 9 8 7 3 7 7 5 9 5 9	7 5 5 6 6 6 7 5 7 9 7 7 7 8 8 8 9 7 8 7 5 5 9 9 9 9 9	5 6 6 5 6 7 8 7 8 5 9 9	6 6 6 7 8 8 9
---	--	---	---	---	---	--	---------------------------------

APPENDIX 5.

There is only one sumcheck made while inputting the data for this program, Transportree. This is to ensure that  $\sum_i a_i = \sum_j b_j$  ( see Chpt. 6 ). After reading in all the data, Tree find is used to find an initial basic feasible solution. The solution is left in the below form. The tree is then ordered by means of Planarize, Convlv and Convrd into the rd, lv representation.

```
procedure Treeform(supply,demand); value supply,demand;
    integer array supply,demand;
comment    The modified N-W corner method is used to find the
initial basic feasible solution ( or initial tree ). This is
rooted at an arbitrary point and described in the below array;
begin
    procedure rowsearch;
    begin    max:=10;
        for j:=m+1 step 1 until m+n do
            if cost[a,j]<max and below[j]=-1 then
                begin    max:=cost[a,j];
                    b:=j; end;
    end rowsearch;
```

```
procedure colsearch;  
begin max:=n10;  
    for j:=1 step 1 until m do  
        if cost[j,a]<max and below[j]=-1 then  
            begin max:=cost[j,a];  
                b:=j; end;  
end colsearch;
```

```
sum:=below[1]:=0;    count:=a:=1;  
for j:=2 step 1 until n+m do    below[j]:=-1;
```

```
RS:  rowsearch;  
    below[b]:=a;    count:=count+1;  
    load[b]:=if supply[a]<demand[b] then  
        supply[a] else demand[b];  
    supply[a]:=supply[a]-load[b];  
    demand[b]:=demand[b]-load[b];  
    sum:=load[b]*cost[a,b]+sum;  
    if count=n+m then goto FIN;  
    if supply[a]>demand[b] then goto RS;  
    a:=b;
```

```
CS:  colsearch;  
    below[b]:=a;    count:=count+1;  
    load[b]:=if supply[b]<demand[a] then  
        supply[b] else demand[a];
```

```
supply[b]:=supply[b]-load[b];
demand[a]:=demand[a]-load[b];
sum:=sum+load[b]*cost[b,a];
if count=n+m then goto FIN;
if demand[a]>supply[b] then goto CS;
a:=b; goto RS;
FIN:
end Tree form;
```

The main iterative loop starts at TOP and finishes at FINISH . First the shadow costs are computed by means of Shad cost. Initially this computation is done for all the points of the tree and thereafter , only for the points of the subtree which has been cut of .

```
procedure Shad cost;
begin first:=true; shadow[1]:=0;
  for j:=process(rd,lu,first,root) while j>0 do
    if j≠1 then
      begin a:=belnext(rd,j);
        shadow[j]:=postcost(a,j)-shadow[a];
      end;
    end;
end shad cost;
```

This is now followed by Extra link which finds the next link to be inserted. If there is no line which will improve the solution, the identifiers endpt1 and endpt2 are made equal to zero. As mentioned in Chpt. 5.3 there are many ways of doing this. Two procedures were written: one searched through for the smallest value of  $\text{cost}[i,j] - \text{shadow}[i] - \text{shadow}[j]$  and the other for the first negative value of that same expression.

```
procedure Extra 1 link;  
begin   cut1:=cut2:=0;  
        for j:=1 step 1 until m do  
            for k:=m+1 step 1 until m+n do  
                if cost[j,k]<shadow[j]+shadow[k] then  
                    begin   cut1:=j;   cut2:=k;  
                        goto E1;   end;  
E1:  
end Extra link;
```

The circuit is completed by means of Loop form. Within the circuit, the smallest load link is found by means of Smallest link and then the loads along the loop are altered by means of Recalc loop.

procedure Smallest link;

begin inc:=10;

for j:=1 step 2 until apex-1,lm step -2 until apex+1 do

if load[loop[j]]<inc then

begin inc:=load[loop[j]];

sl1:=loop[j];

sl2:=belnext(rd,sl1);

lo:=j; end;

end Smallest link;

procedure Loop form;

begin ga:=gnrd(rd,cut1);

gb:=gnrd(rd,cut2);

c:=if ga>gb then cut1 else cut2;

d:=if c=cut1 then cut2 else cut1;

if c≠cut1 then begin j:=ga; ga:=gb;

gb:=j; end;

e:=0; f:=n+m;

for j:=c,belnext(rd,k) while ga>gb do

begin e:=e+1; loop[e]:=k:=j;

ga:=ga-1; end;

apex:=e;

loop[n+m]:=d;

```
if loop[e]≠d then  
  for j:=belnext(rd,loop[e]) while j≠loop[e] do  
    begin   e:=e+1;   loop[e]:=j;  
      if loop[e]=belnext(rd,loop[f]) then  
        begin   apex:=e;  
          for k:=f step 1 until n+m do  
            begin   e:=e+1;  
              loop[e]:=loop[k];  
            end;  
          goto LC1;  
        end;  
      f:=f-1;  
      loop[f]:=belnext(rd,loop[f+1]);  
    end;  
LC1:   lm:=e;  
end   Loop form;
```

```
procedure Recalc loop;  
begin   for j:=1 step 2 until apex-1,  
      lm step -2 until apex+1 do  
        load[loop[j]]:=load[loop[j]]-inc;  
  for j:=2 step 2 until apex-1,  
    lm-1 step -2 until apex+1 do  
      load[loop[j]]:=load[loop[j]]+inc;
```

```
if lo>apex then  
    begin    for j:=lo step 1 until lm-1 do  
        load[loop[j]]:=load[loop[j+1]];  
        load[loop[lm]]:=inc;  
    end  
else    begin    for j:=lo step -1 until 2 do  
        load[loop[j]]:=load[loop[j-1]];  
        load[loop[1]]:=inc;  
    end;  
for j:=1 step 2 until lm-1 do  
    sum:=sum-incxpostcost(loop[j],loop[j+1]);  
for j:=2 step 2 until lm-2 do  
    sum:=sum+incxpostcost(loop[j],loop[j+1]);  
sum:=sum+postcost(loop[1],loop[lm]) $\times$ inc;  
end Recalc loop;
```

We have thus so far found a line to delete within a feasible solution, found another to insert (so as to keep the solution basic and feasible) and altered the loads along the affected route accordingly . However the information is not as yet in the required form . The tree has to be manipulated. This is accomplished by Treecut and Fixtop. Treecut cuts the tree into two parts at smallest link and the tree is rejoined into a single tree by means of Fixtop at the points given by Extra link.

A final procedure Print was written so as to monitor what was happening in the program . Every out number of iterations (out being input with the rest of the data) , the tree and its cost was output . At the end the final solution , its cost and the number of iterations is output with the time taken to complete the computation.

```
procedure Print;
begin   f:=format([ndddd]);
        writetext(30,[[4c]TOTAL***COST**IS]);
        write(30,f,sum);
        writetext(30,[[6c]*****ROUTE*****LOAD*****COST
            [c]*****-----[10s]-----[5s]-----[2c]]);
        first:=true;
        for j:=process(rd,lu,first,1) while j>0 do
            if j≠1 then
                begin   write(30,f,j);   writetext(30,[[s]]);
                        write(30,f,belnext(rd,j)); writetext(30,[[7s]]);
                        write(30,f,load[j]); writetext(30,[[4s]]);
                        write(30,f+1,load[j]xpostcost(belnext(rd,j),j));
                end;
        end Print;
```

The complete program now follows on the next page.

```
begin   integer   n,m,z,datanr,out,pr;  
    open(20);    open(30);  
    data nr:=read(20);  
START:   out:=read(20);  
    m:=read(20);    n:=read(20);    z:=n+m;  
    begin   integer   sum,j,k,lo,sl1,sl2,p,b,count,ga,gb,cut1,  
            cut2,c,e,items,root,d,f,nr,lu,max,a,apex,lm,inc;  
    integer array   cost[1:m,m+1:m+n],supply[1:m],demand[m+1:m+n],  
            below,nbr,shadow,loop,load,rd,lu[1:m+n];  
    boolean   first;
```

( All the procedures described in this appendix  
with Planarize, Convlu, Convrd, process,  
belnext, Success, Na, su, topleft, Treecut,  
Fixtop, nbr next and Refl are now declared. )

```
items:=a:=b:=0;    root:=1;  
for j:=1 step 1 until m do  
  begin    supply[j]:=read(20);  
    b:=b+supply[j];    end;  
for j:=m+1 step 1 until m+n do  
  begin    demand[j]:=read(20);  
    a:=a+demand[j];    end;
```

```
for j:=1 step 1 until m do  
  for k:=m+1 step 1 until m+n do  
    cost[j,k]:=read(20);  
if a≠b then begin   writetext(30,[[6c]FAILURE**IN**INPUT  
                      *---*DEMAND**NOT**EQUAL**TO**SUPPLY]);  
                      goto FAIL;   end;
```

```
Treeform(supply,demand);  
writetext(30,[[p]CL21*****AKPO/TREE/TRANSPORT[8c]  
            INITIAL***SOLUTION[2c]]);  
Planarize(below,nbr,z);  
Convlu(below,nbr,z,lu);  
Convrd(below,nbr,z,rd);  
Print;
```

```
TOP:  iterns:=iterns+1;  
      Shad cost;  
      Extra 2 link;  
      if cut1=0then goto FINISH;  
      Loop form;  
      Smallest link;  
      Recalc load;  
      Treecut(sl1,sl2,rd,lu);  
      nr:=if lo<apex then loop[1] else loop[1m];  
      lu:=if nr=loop[1] then loop[1m] else loop[1];
```

```
root:=loop[if lo>apex then lm else 1];
Newtree(nr,s11,rd,lu);
Fixtop(nr,lu,rd,lu);
if(iterns+out)≠(iterns/out) then goto TOP;
writetext(30,[[4c]SOLUTION***FOR***ITERATION***NUMBER]);
write(30,format([ndddcc]),iterns);
Print;
goto TOP;
FINISH: writetext(30,[[8c]FINAL***SOLUTION[c]-----*****-----
      ----[4c]NUMBER**OF**ITERATIONS**=]);
write(30,format([ndddc]),iterns-1);
Print;
FAIL: datanr:=datanr-1;
if datanr≠0 then goto START;
writetext(30,[[8c]END***OF***TREETRANSPORT[6c]]);
end;
close(20); close(30);
end→
```

# App. 5.1 Specimen Input and Output.

The minimum storage required for this method is of the order  $m \times n + 6(m + n)$ , where  $m$  is the number of transmitters and  $n$  the number of receivers. The program described in the last sub-appendix requires a further  $2 \times (m + n)$  locations to carry the initial tree in both the below, posnbr and rd,lu representations. In order to reduce this, it would have been necessary to have split the program into two parts : one would compute the initial tree and output it in the rd, lu representation on paper tape , and the other part would read in the initial tree , analyse it and find the minimal solution. The split would occur at the label TOP: in the program. Data for input should be in the following form :-

data nr ;    number of blocks of data.

out ;            iteration output counter.

m ;   n ;

$b_1$  ;  $b_2$  ; ..... ;  $b_n$  ;

$a_1$  ;  $a_2$  ; ..... ;  $a_m$  ;

$c_{11}$  ;  $c_{12}$  ; . . . ;  $c_{1n}$  ;

$c_{21}$  ;  $c_{22}$  ; . . . ;  $c_{2n}$  ;

. . . . .

$c_{n1}$  ;  $c_{n2}$  ; . . . ;  $c_{nm}$  ;

Here is a specimen problem with the data ready for input and the output from the program.

1;  
6;  
6; 12;  
  
10; 14; 9; 15; 11; 13;  
6; 6; 5; 7; 4; 8; 6; 5; 3; 7; 6; 9;  
  
1; 2; 2; 3; 4; 4; 1; 2; 4; 3; 2; 3;  
3; 3; 4; 2; 2; 3; 2; 3; 2; 2; 4; 5;  
5; 4; 2; 1; 4; 1; 2; 3; 3; 5; 4; 5;  
1; 5; 2; 4; 5; 4; 4; 2; 1; 4; 5; 2;  
2; 3; 4; 2; 3; 1; 5; 4; 2; 4; 3; 5;  
3; 3; 1; 4; 3; 4; 3; 4; 3; 4; 4; 1;

→→→

( Program output )

CL21 AKPO/TREE/TRANSPORT

INITIAL SOLUTION

TOTAL COST IS 149

ROUTE		LOAD	COST
-----		-----	-----
13	1	4	4
2	13	2	4
15	2	1	2
4	15	2	2
18	4	3	6
6	18	6	6
12	6	1	4
3	12	7	7
17	3	2	8
5	17	4	12
16	5	7	28
8	6	6	18
14	4	5	10
9	4	5	10
11	2	4	8
10	2	7	14
7	1	6	6

SOLUTION FOR ITERATION NUMBER 6

TOTAL COST IS 129

ROUTE		LOAD	COST
-----		-----	-----
13	1	6	6
7	1	4	4
4	7	2	2
15	4	3	3
14	4	5	10
9	4	5	10
6	9	0	0
8	6	4	12
5	8	2	6
16	5	3	12

2	16	4	8
11	2	4	8
10	2	6	12
3	10	1	1
12	3	8	8
17	5	6	18
18	6	9	9

FINAL SOLUTION

-----

NUMBER OF ITERATIONS = 11

TOTAL COST IS 109

ROUTE		LOAD	COST
-----		----	----
17	1	1	2
5	17	5	15
12	5	6	6
3	12	2	2
9	3	0	0
4	9	1	2
7	4	6	6
15	4	3	3
14	4	5	10
6	9	4	4
18	6	9	9
10	3	7	7
8	1	3	6
2	8	3	9
16	2	7	14
11	2	4	8
13	1	6	6

END OF TREETRANSPORT

END 1M 9S